

Dialogic[®] DSI Signaling Servers

SGW Mode User Manual

Copyright and Legal Notice

Copyright © 2005-2008 Dialogic Corporation. All Rights Reserved. You may not reproduce this document in whole or in part without permission in writing from Dialogic Corporation at the address provided below.

All contents of this document are furnished for informational use only and are subject to change without notice and do not represent a commitment on the part of Dialogic Corporation or its subsidiaries ("Dialogic"). Reasonable effort is made to ensure the accuracy of the information contained in the document. However, Dialogic does not warrant the accuracy of this information and cannot accept responsibility for errors, inaccuracies or omissions that may be contained in this document.

INFORMATION IN THIS DOCUMENT IS PROVIDED IN CONNECTION WITH DIALOGIC® PRODUCTS. NO LICENSE, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, BY ESTOPPEL OR OTHERWISE, TO ANY INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS IS GRANTED BY THIS DOCUMENT. EXCEPT AS PROVIDED IN A SIGNED AGREEMENT BETWEEN YOU AND DIALOGIC, DIALOGIC ASSUMES NO LIABILITY WHATSOEVER, AND DIALOGIC DISCLAIMS ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY, RELATING TO SALE AND/OR USE OF DIALOGIC PRODUCTS INCLUDING LIABILITY OR WARRANTIES RELATING TO FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, MERCHANTABILITY, OR INFRINGEMENT OF ANY INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHT OF A THIRD PARTY.

Dialogic products are not intended for use in medical, life saving, life sustaining, critical control or safety systems, or in nuclear facility applications.

Due to differing national regulations and approval requirements, certain Dialogic products may be suitable for use only in specific countries, and thus may not function properly in other countries. You are responsible for ensuring that your use of such products occurs only in the countries where such use is suitable. For information on specific products, contact Dialogic Corporation at the address indicated below or on the web at www.dialogic.com.

It is possible that the use or implementation of any one of the concepts, applications, or ideas described in this document, in marketing collateral produced by or on web pages maintained by Dialogic may infringe one or more patents or other intellectual property rights owned by third parties. Dialogic does not provide any intellectual property licenses with the sale of Dialogic products other than a license to use such product in accordance with intellectual property owned or validly licensed by Dialogic and no such licenses are provided except pursuant to a signed agreement with Dialogic. More detailed information about such intellectual property is available from Dialogic's legal department at 9800 Cavendish Blvd., 5th Floor, Montreal, Quebec, Canada H4M 2V9.

Dialogic encourages all users of its products to procure all necessary intellectual property licenses required to implement any concepts or applications and does not condone or encourage any intellectual property infringement and disclaims any responsibility related thereto. These intellectual property licenses may differ from country to country and it is the responsibility of those who develop the concepts or applications to be aware of and comply with different national license requirements.

Any use case(s) shown and/or described herein represent one or more examples of the various ways, scenarios or environments in which Dialogic® products can be used. Such use case(s) are non-limiting and do not represent recommendations of Dialogic as to whether or how to use Dialogic products.

Dialogic, Dialogic Pro, Brooktrout, Cantata, SnowShore, Eicon, Eicon Networks, Eiconcard, Diva, SIPcontrol, Diva ISDN, TruFax, Realblobs, Realcomm 100, NetAccess, Instant ISDN, TRXStream, Exnet, Exnet Connect, EXS, ExchangePlus VSE, Switchkit, N20, Powering The Service-Ready Network, Vantage, Making Innovation Thrive, Connecting People to Information, Connecting to Growth and Shiva, among others as well as related logos, are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Dialogic. Dialogic's trademarks may be used publicly only with permission from Dialogic. Such permission may only be granted by Dialogic's legal department at 9800 Cavendish Blvd., 5th Floor, Montreal, Quebec, Canada H4M 2V9. Any authorized use of Dialogic's trademarks will be subject to full respect of the trademark guidelines published by Dialogic from time to time and any use of Dialogic's trademarks requires proper acknowledgement.

Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. Other names of actual companies and products mentioned herein are the trademarks of their respective owners.

Publication Date: August 2008

Document Number: 05-2304-005

Contents

| | | |
|----------|---|-----------|
| 1 | Overview | 9 |
| 1.1 | General Description | 9 |
| 1.2 | Related Information | 10 |
| 1.3 | Applicability | 10 |
| 1.4 | Hardware Overview | 10 |
| 1.4.1 | Part Numbers | 11 |
| 1.5 | Connectivity | 11 |
| 1.6 | User Interface | 11 |
| 1.7 | Configuration and Program Storage | 11 |
| 1.8 | IP Security | 12 |
| 1.9 | Functional Summary | 12 |
| 1.9.1 | Signaling | 12 |
| 1.9.2 | Configuration Model | 13 |
| 1.9.3 | Cross Connections | 13 |
| 1.9.4 | Monitoring | 13 |
| 1.9.5 | Remote Data Centers | 13 |
| 1.9.6 | Alarm Log | 14 |
| 1.9.7 | Diagnostic Log Files | 14 |
| 1.9.8 | M3UA Backhaul Operation | 14 |
| 1.9.9 | M2PA Longhaul Operation | 15 |
| 1.9.10 | Default Routing | 15 |
| 1.9.11 | Resilience | 16 |
| 2 | Specification | 17 |
| 2.1 | Hardware Specification | 17 |
| 2.2 | Software Licenses | 18 |
| 2.2.1 | Software Licenses for the SS7G31 and SS7G32 Signaling Servers | 18 |
| 2.2.2 | Software Licenses for the SS7G21 and SS7G22 Signaling Servers | 18 |
| 2.3 | Capabilities | 18 |
| 2.3.1 | Dialogic® DSI SS7G31 and SS7G32 Signaling Servers Protocol Capabilities | 18 |
| 2.3.2 | Dialogic® DSI SS7G21 and SS7G22 Signaling Server Protocol Capabilities | 19 |
| 3 | Licensing, Installation and Initial Configuration | 21 |
| 3.1 | Software Licensing | 21 |
| 3.1.1 | Purchasing Software Licenses | 21 |
| 3.1.2 | Temporary Licenses | 22 |
| 3.2 | Installing the Signaling Gateway | 22 |
| 3.2.1 | Connecting a VT100 Terminal | 22 |
| 3.2.2 | IP Configuration | 23 |
| 3.2.3 | Software Download | 24 |
| 3.2.4 | Installing Software Licenses | 25 |
| 3.2.5 | License Update from Remote Data Center | 25 |
| 3.2.6 | Changing System Operation Mode | 26 |
| 3.2.7 | Configuration Procedure | 26 |
| 4 | Operation | 27 |
| 4.1 | General | 27 |
| 4.2 | Log On/Off Procedure | 27 |
| 4.3 | Command Character Set and Syntax | 28 |
| 4.4 | Command Formats | 28 |
| 4.5 | Command Entry | 29 |
| 4.6 | Dangerous Commands | 29 |
| 4.7 | Changing Configuration Data | 29 |
| 4.8 | Command Responses | 29 |
| 4.9 | FTP Access | 30 |
| 4.10 | Backing Up System Software | 31 |

| | | |
|----------|---|-----------|
| 4.10.1 | Software Backup to a Remote Data Center | 31 |
| 4.11 | Updating System Software | 31 |
| 4.11.1 | Software Update from a Remote Data Center | 32 |
| 4.11.2 | Software Update from Portable Media | 32 |
| 4.11.3 | Software Update from Startup | 32 |
| 4.12 | Backing Up Configuration Data | 33 |
| 4.12.1 | Configuration Backup to Remote Data Center | 33 |
| 4.13 | Updating Configuration Data | 33 |
| 4.13.1 | Configuration Update from a Remote Data Center | 33 |
| 4.13.2 | Configuration Update from Portable Media | 34 |
| 4.13.3 | Configuration Update from Startup | 34 |
| 4.14 | Creating a System Archive | 35 |
| 4.15 | Restoring System Archive | 35 |
| 5 | Parameter Definitions | 37 |
| 5.1 | Parameter Table | 37 |
| 5.2 | Remote Operations | 46 |
| 5.3 | Signaling Gateway Timers | 46 |
| 5.3.1 | Signaling Gateway-Specific Timers | 46 |
| 5.3.2 | MTP3-Specific Timers | 47 |
| 5.3.3 | SCTP-Specific Timers | 48 |
| 5.4 | Dialogic® DSI Network Interface Board Types | 48 |
| 6 | Command Definitions | 49 |
| 6.1 | Command Groups | 49 |
| 6.2 | Command Notation | 49 |
| 6.3 | Command Attributes | 49 |
| 6.4 | Alarm Commands | 50 |
| 6.4.1 | ALCLS – Alarm Class Set | 50 |
| 6.4.2 | ALCLP – Alarm Class Print | 50 |
| 6.4.3 | ALFCP – Alarm Fault Code Print | 51 |
| 6.4.4 | ALLIP – Alarm List Print | 51 |
| 6.4.5 | ALLOP – Alarm Log Print | 52 |
| 6.4.6 | ALREI – Alarm Reset Initiate | 53 |
| 6.4.7 | ALTEI – Alarm Test Initiate | 53 |
| 6.4.8 | ALTEE – Alarm Test End | 54 |
| 6.5 | Configuration Commands | 55 |
| 6.5.1 | CNBOI – Configuration Board Initiate | 56 |
| 6.5.2 | CNBOE – Configuration Board End | 56 |
| 6.5.3 | CNBOP – Configuration Board Print | 57 |
| 6.5.4 | CNBUI – Configuration Back Up Initiate | 57 |
| 6.5.5 | CNMOI – Configuration Monitor Initiate | 58 |
| 6.5.6 | CNMOE – Configuration Monitor End | 58 |
| 6.5.7 | CNMOP – Configuration Monitor Print | 59 |
| 6.5.8 | CNOBP – Display TRAP Configuration | 59 |
| 6.5.9 | CNOBS – Set TRAP Configuration | 60 |
| 6.5.10 | CNPCI – Configuration PCM Initiate | 61 |
| 6.5.11 | CNPCC – Configuration PCM Change | 62 |
| 6.5.12 | CNPCE – Configuration PCM End | 62 |
| 6.5.13 | CNPCP – Configuration PCM Print | 62 |
| 6.5.14 | CNRDI – Configuration Remote Data Center Initiate | 63 |
| 6.5.15 | CNRDC – Configuration Remote Data Center Change | 63 |
| 6.5.16 | CNRDE – Configuration Remote Data Center End | 64 |
| 6.5.17 | CNRDP – Configuration Remote Data Center Print | 64 |
| 6.5.18 | CNSMC – Change SNMP Manager Configuration | 65 |
| 6.5.19 | CNSME – End SNMP Manager Configuration | 65 |
| 6.5.20 | CNSMI – Set SNMP Manager Configuration | 65 |
| 6.5.21 | CNSMP – Display SNMP Manager Configuration | 66 |
| 6.5.22 | CNSNS – Configuration SNMP Set | 67 |
| 6.5.23 | CNSNP – Configuration SNMP Print | 67 |
| 6.5.24 | CNSWP – Configuration Software Print | 68 |
| 6.5.25 | CNSYS – Configuration System Set | 68 |

| | | |
|--------|---|-----|
| 6.5.26 | CNSYP – Configuration System Print | 69 |
| 6.5.27 | CNTDS – Configuration Time and Date Set | 70 |
| 6.5.28 | CNTDP – Configuration Time And Date Print | 71 |
| 6.5.29 | CNTOS – Configuration Timeout Value Set | 71 |
| 6.5.30 | CNTOP – Configuration Timeout Value Print | 72 |
| 6.5.31 | CNTPE – Configuration Network Time Protocol Server End | 72 |
| 6.5.32 | CNTPI – Configuration Network Time Protocol Server Initiate | 72 |
| 6.5.33 | CNTPP – Configuration Network Time Protocol Print | 73 |
| 6.5.34 | CNTSP – Configuration Timeslot Print | 73 |
| 6.5.35 | CNUPI – Configuration Update Initiate | 74 |
| 6.5.36 | CNUSC – Change SNMP v3 User Configuration | 75 |
| 6.5.37 | CNUSE – End SNMP v3 | 75 |
| 6.5.38 | CNUSI – Set SNMP v3 | 76 |
| 6.5.39 | CNUSP – Display SNMP v3 | 76 |
| 6.5.40 | CNXCI – Configuration Cross Connect Initiate | 77 |
| 6.5.41 | CNXCE – Configuration Cross Connect End | 77 |
| 6.5.42 | CNXCP – Configuration Cross Connect Print | 78 |
| 6.6 | SS7 Signaling Commands | 79 |
| 6.6.1 | C7LSI – CCS SS7 Link Set Initiate | 79 |
| 6.6.2 | C7LSC – CCS SS7 Link Set Change | 80 |
| 6.6.3 | C7LSE – CCS SS7 Link Set End | 80 |
| 6.6.4 | C7LSP – CCS SS7 Link Set Print | 81 |
| 6.6.5 | C7RTI – CCS SS7 Route Initiate | 81 |
| 6.6.6 | C7RTC – CCS SS7 Route Change | 82 |
| 6.6.7 | C7RTE – CCS SS7 Route End | 82 |
| 6.6.8 | C7RTP – CCS SS7 Route Print | 83 |
| 6.6.9 | C7SLI – CCS SS7 Signaling Link Initiate | 83 |
| 6.6.10 | C7SLC – CCS SS7 Signaling Link Change | 84 |
| 6.6.11 | C7SLE – CCS SS7 Signaling Link End | 85 |
| 6.6.12 | C7SLP – CCS SS7 Signaling Link Print | 85 |
| 6.7 | IP Commands | 86 |
| 6.7.1 | IPEPS – Set Ethernet Port Configuration | 86 |
| 6.7.2 | IPEPP – Display Ethernet Port Configuration | 87 |
| 6.7.3 | IPGWI – Internet Protocol Gateway Initiate | 87 |
| 6.7.4 | IPGWE – Internet Protocol Gateway End | 88 |
| 6.7.5 | IPGWP – Internet Protocol Gateway Print | 88 |
| 6.8 | MML Commands | 89 |
| 6.8.1 | MMLOI – MML Log Off Initiate | 89 |
| 6.8.2 | MMLOP – MML Log Off Print | 89 |
| 6.8.3 | MMLOS – MML Log Off Set | 90 |
| 6.8.4 | MMPTC – MML Port Change | 90 |
| 6.8.5 | MMPTP – MML Port Print | 90 |
| 6.9 | Maintenance Commands | 92 |
| 6.9.1 | MNBLI – Maintenance Blocking Initiate | 92 |
| 6.9.2 | MNBLE – Maintenance Blocking End | 93 |
| 6.9.3 | MNINI – Maintenance Inhibit Initiate | 94 |
| 6.9.4 | MNINE – Maintenance Inhibit End | 94 |
| 6.9.5 | MNRSI – Maintenance Restart System Initiate | 95 |
| 6.10 | Measurement Commands | 96 |
| 6.10.1 | MSC7P – Measurements SS7 Print | 96 |
| 6.10.2 | MSEPP – Measurement Ethernet Port Print | 97 |
| 6.10.3 | MSLCP – Measurement of License Capability Print | 98 |
| 6.10.4 | MSPCP – Measurements PCM Print | 99 |
| 6.10.5 | MSSLP – Measurements SIGTRAN Link Print | 100 |
| 6.10.6 | MSSYP – Measurements System Print | 100 |
| 6.11 | Remote Data Center Commands | 102 |
| 6.11.1 | RDCRI – Remote Data Center Continuous Record Initiate | 102 |
| 6.11.2 | RDCRC – Remote Data Center Continuous Record Change | 103 |
| 6.11.3 | RDCRE – Remote Data Center Continuous Record End | 103 |
| 6.11.4 | RDCRP – Remote Data Center Continuous Record Print | 104 |
| 6.11.5 | RDPDI – Remote Data Center Periodic Data Initiate | 104 |
| 6.11.6 | RDPDE – Remote Data Center Periodic Data End | 105 |
| 6.11.7 | RDPDP – Remote Data Center Periodic Data Print | 105 |
| 6.11.8 | RDPRI – Remote Data Center Periodic Report Initiate | 106 |
| 6.11.9 | RDPRI – Remote Data Center Periodic Report Change | 106 |

| | | |
|----------|--|------------|
| 6.11.10 | RDPRE – Remote Data Center Periodic Report End | 107 |
| 6.11.11 | RDPRP – Remote Data Center Periodic Report Print | 107 |
| 6.12 | Signaling Gateway Commands | 108 |
| 6.12.1 | SGDPI – Signaling Gateway Destination Point Initiate | 108 |
| 6.12.2 | SGDPC – Signaling Gateway Destination Point Change | 109 |
| 6.12.3 | SGDPE – Signaling Gateway Destination Point End | 109 |
| 6.12.4 | SGDPP – Signaling Gateway Destination Point Print | 109 |
| 6.12.5 | SGIRI – Signaling Gateway Incoming Route Initiate | 110 |
| 6.12.6 | SGIRC – Signaling Gateway Incoming Route Change | 111 |
| 6.12.7 | SGIRE – Signaling Gateway Incoming Route End | 111 |
| 6.12.8 | SGIRP – Signaling Gateway Incoming Route Print | 111 |
| 6.12.9 | SGRKI – Signaling Gateway Routing Key Initiate | 112 |
| 6.12.10 | SGRKE – Signaling Gateway Routing Key End | 113 |
| 6.12.11 | SGRKP – Signaling Gateway Routing Key Print | 113 |
| 6.13 | SIGTRAN Commands | 114 |
| 6.13.1 | SNALI – SIGTRAN Application Server List Initiate | 114 |
| 6.13.2 | SNALE – SIGTRAN Application Server List End | 115 |
| 6.13.3 | SNALP – SIGTRAN Application Server List Print | 115 |
| 6.13.4 | SNRAI – SIGTRAN Remote Application Server Initiate | 116 |
| 6.13.5 | SNRAE – SIGTRAN Remote Application Server End | 116 |
| 6.13.6 | SNRAP – SIGTRAN Remote Application Server Print | 117 |
| 6.13.7 | SNNAI – SIGTRAN Network Appearance Initiate | 117 |
| 6.13.8 | SNNAE – SIGTRAN Network Appearance End | 118 |
| 6.13.9 | SNNAP – SIGTRAN Network Appearance Print | 118 |
| 6.13.10 | SNSLI – SIGTRAN Signaling Link Initiate | 119 |
| 6.13.11 | SNSLC – SIGTRAN Signaling Link Change | 120 |
| 6.13.12 | SNSLE – SIGTRAN Signaling Link End | 120 |
| 6.13.13 | SNSLP – SIGTRAN Signaling Link Print | 121 |
| 6.14 | Status Commands | 122 |
| 6.14.1 | STALP – Status Alarm Print | 122 |
| 6.14.2 | STRAP – Status Remote Application Server Print | 123 |
| 6.14.3 | STBOP – Status Board Print | 124 |
| 6.14.4 | STCRP – Status C7 Route Print | 124 |
| 6.14.5 | STC7P – Status C7 Link Print | 125 |
| 6.14.6 | STDDP – Status Disk Drive Print | 126 |
| 6.14.7 | STEPP – Status Ethernet Port Print | 127 |
| 6.14.8 | STIPP – Status IP Print | 127 |
| 6.14.9 | STLCP – Status Licensing Print | 128 |
| 6.14.10 | STPCP – Status PCM Print | 129 |
| 6.14.11 | STRDP – Status Remote Data Center Print | 130 |
| 6.14.12 | STSLP – Status SIGTRAN Link Print | 131 |
| 6.14.13 | STSYP – Status System Print | 132 |
| 6.14.14 | STTPP – Network Time Protocol Status Print | 133 |
| 7 | Configuration Overview | 135 |
| 7.1 | System, Hardware and Signaling Configuration | 135 |
| 7.1.1 | System Configuration | 135 |
| 7.1.2 | Boards and PCMs | 136 |
| 7.2 | Signaling Configuration | 137 |
| 7.2.1 | SS7 Configuration | 137 |
| 7.2.2 | High Speed Signaling Links Configuration | 138 |
| 7.2.3 | SS7 M2PA Operation | 138 |
| 7.2.4 | M3UA Configuration | 139 |
| 7.3 | Routing Configuration | 140 |
| 7.4 | Management and Operations | 141 |
| 7.5 | Default Routing | 141 |
| 7.5.1 | Configuring Default Routing | 142 |
| 7.6 | Resilience | 143 |
| 7.6.1 | IP Port Bonding | 143 |
| 7.6.2 | Dual Resilient Operation | 143 |
| 7.6.3 | Multihoming | 146 |
| 7.7 | Hard Disk Management | 146 |
| 7.7.1 | SS7G21 and SS7G22 Hard Disk Drives | 146 |

| | | |
|-----------|--|------------|
| 7.7.2 | SS7G31 and SS7G32 Hard Disk Drive RAID Array | 146 |
| 8 | Alarm Fault Code Listing | 149 |
| 9 | Remote Data Center Operation..... | 153 |
| 9.1 | Local Data Centers..... | 153 |
| 9.2 | Continuous Records | 153 |
| 9.3 | Periodic Reporting..... | 153 |
| 9.3.1 | C7 Link Traffic Measurements | 153 |
| 9.3.2 | PCM Traffic Measurements | 153 |
| 9.3.3 | SIGTRAN Link Traffic Measurements | 154 |
| 9.3.4 | Ethernet Port Traffic Measurements | 154 |
| 9.3.5 | System Measurements | 154 |
| 9.4 | RDC File Formats | 154 |
| 9.4.1 | Alarm Record File Format | 154 |
| 9.4.2 | Ethernet Port Measurements File Format | 155 |
| 9.4.3 | PCM Measurements File Format | 155 |
| 9.4.4 | SS7 Link Measurements File Format | 156 |
| 9.4.5 | SIGTRAN Link Measurements File Format | 156 |
| 9.4.6 | System Measurements File Format | 157 |
| 9.5 | RDC Configuration and Usage..... | 157 |
| 9.5.1 | RDC Initialization..... | 157 |
| 9.5.2 | Continuous Records | 157 |
| 9.5.3 | Periodic Reports..... | 158 |
| 9.5.4 | Software Update..... | 159 |
| 9.5.5 | Configuration Backup | 159 |
| 9.5.6 | Configuration Update | 159 |
| 9.5.7 | Software Option Installation | 159 |
| 10 | Signaling Server SNMP | 161 |
| 10.1 | Overview | 161 |
| 10.1.1 | DSMI SNMP | 161 |
| 10.1.2 | DK4032 SNMP..... | 161 |
| 11 | Worked Configuration Examples | 165 |
| 11.1 | Backhaul Configuration..... | 165 |
| 11.2 | M2PA Longhaul Configuration | 166 |
| 11.3 | Dual Resilient Configuration | 167 |
| 11.3.1 | SG 1 Configuration..... | 167 |
| 11.3.2 | SG 2 Configuration..... | 168 |
| 12 | Network Time Protocol | 169 |
| 13 | Command Summary | 171 |
| | Glossary | 175 |

Figures

| | | |
|----|------------------------------------|-----|
| 1 | M3UA Backhaul Configuration..... | 15 |
| 2 | M2PA Longhaul Configuration | 15 |
| 3 | Dual Resilient Configuration | 16 |
| 4 | Multiple IP Networks | 135 |
| 5 | Physical Configuration | 136 |
| 6 | SS7 Signaling Example..... | 137 |
| 7 | M2PA Example | 138 |
| 8 | M3UA Backhaul Example | 139 |
| 9 | Routing Configuration Example..... | 140 |
| 10 | System Using Default Routing | 142 |
| 11 | Dual Resilient Operation | 145 |

| | | |
|----|--|-----|
| 12 | Example Back-Haul Configuration | 165 |
| 13 | M2PA Longhaul Configuration | 166 |
| 14 | Example Dual Resilient Configuration | 167 |

Tables

| | | |
|----|--|-----|
| 1 | Command Rejection Responses | 30 |
| 2 | System Files Stored in the syslog Subdirectory | 35 |
| 3 | Parameter Definitions..... | 37 |
| 4 | Remote Operation Types..... | 46 |
| 5 | Signaling Gateway Specific Timers | 46 |
| 6 | MTP3 ITU Timers | 47 |
| 7 | MTP3 ANSI Timers..... | 47 |
| 8 | SCTP-Specific Timers | 48 |
| 9 | Dialogic® DSI Network Interface Board Types..... | 48 |
| 10 | Alarm Fault Codes | 149 |

Revision History

| Date | Part Number | Issue | Description of Changes |
|----------------|----------------|-------|---|
| August 2008 | 05-2305-005 | 5 | Information updated to include the Dialogic® DSI SS7G31 and SS7G32 Signaling Servers and licensing. |
| June 2008 | 05-2305-005-01 | 5-01 | Trial release version. Information updated to include the Dialogic® DSI SS7G31 and SS7G32 Signaling Servers and licensing. |
| September 2007 | 05-2304-004 | 4 | Updates for brand changes, web sites, and other minor corrections. |
| December 2005 | 05-2304-003 | 3 | Updates to include support for resilient IP connectivity, additional measurement and status commands (STSYP, MSSYP and MSEPP) and other minor enhancements and corrections. |
| May 2005 | 05-2304-001 | 2 | Supports the first production release. |
| March 2005 | 05-2304-001-01 | 1 | Field Trial release. |

Note: The current issue of this guide can be found at:
<http://www.dialogic.com/support/helpweb/signaling>

Chapter 1: Overview

1.1 General Description

The Dialogic® DSI SS7G21, SS7G22, SS7G31 and SS7G32 Signaling Servers (hereafter, sometimes referred to as "Signaling Server(s)"), with an SGW Mode software license installed and enabled, operate as Dialogic® DSI Signaling Gateways (hereafter sometimes referred to as "Signaling Gateway(s)"). They provide an interface between SS7 and IP networks, allowing SS7 information to be carried over IP to either IP resident signaling points and applications (for example, a soft switch) or to another Signaling Gateway. IETF SIGTRAN protocols are used to help to ensure interoperability with third party equipment.

Each Signaling Server may be purchased as one of several equipment types. The SS7G21 and SS7G22 equipment types use the same chassis and operate with the same software, but use different signaling boards. The SS7G31 and SS7G32 equipment types use different chassis supporting different numbers of signaling boards, but use the same software. See [Section 1.4, "Hardware Overview" on page 10](#) for a description of the Signaling Server hardware.

The Signaling Gateway uses the SIGTRAN M3UA protocol to "backhaul" SS7 signaling messages to IP resident Application Servers, removing the need for Application Hosts to have dedicated SS7 MTP services or hardware. Application Servers using the Signaling Gateway may be part of a single point code or multiple point codes.

The Signaling Gateway M3UA architecture uses open standards interfaces, providing flexibility, scalability and resilience. It is easy to add or reconfigure M3UA Application Servers and Signaling Gateways to address demands for new services or increased capacity.

The Signaling Gateway also supports SIGTRAN M2PA protocol to talk to other Point Codes over IP links, rather than TDM. M2PA may be used to connect within the central office, or for longhaul links over IP.

The SS7G21 and SS7G22 Signaling Servers are shipped in Signaling Unit Interface (SIU) Mode. To enable SGW functionality, order a SS7SBG20SGW license.

The SS7G31 and SS7G32 Signaling Servers are shipped in TEST Mode - without any operation mode license installed. To enable SGW functionality, order either a SS7SBG30SGWU, SS7SBG30SGWL or SS7SBG30SGWJ license. See [Section 2.2, "Software Licenses" on page 18](#) for more information about the available licenses, and [Section 3, "Licensing, Installation and Initial Configuration" on page 21](#) for information about license purchase, installation and operation.

A Signaling Server with the SGW Mode license installed and enabled is referred to as a "Signaling Gateway" throughout this manual.

The Signaling Server, if equipped with the SIU Mode software license, operates as a Signaling Interface Unit (SIU), providing an interface to SS7 networks for a number of distributed application platforms via TCP/IP LAN. In this mode, the unit implements the SS7 Message Transfer Part (MTP) and a number of User Parts (ISUP, SCCP, TCAP, MAP, IS41 and INAP). Refer to the *Dialogic® DSI Signaling Servers SIU Mode User Manual* for details of this operation mode.

The Signaling Server, if equipped with the DSC Mode software license, operates as a Digital Signaling Converter providing signaling conversion between pairs of network-side or access-side telephony protocols. Refer to the *Dialogic® SS7G21 and SS7G22 Signaling Servers DSC Mode User Manual* for details of this operation mode. DSC Mode operation is not available on the SS7G31 or SS7G32 products.

Refer to section [Section 3, "Licensing, Installation and Initial Configuration" on page 21](#) for procedures about the purchase and installation of software option licenses. Refer to [Chapter 3, "Licensing, Installation and Initial Configuration" on page 21](#) for procedures required to configure the Signaling Server for SGW Mode operation.

1.2 Related Information

This user manual, together with the *Dialogic® SS7G21 and SS7G22 Signaling Servers Hardware Manual* (05-2300-xxxx) and the *Dialogic® DSI SS7G31 and SS7G32 Signaling Servers Hardware Manual* (05-2630-xxxx) form the documentation set for the SGW mode of operation of a Signaling Server. These hardware manuals address hardware-specific aspects of the product including: installation, specification, module replacement and a full description of the hardware modules. This user manual describes the user interface, together with applicable parameters and configuration commands.

Current software and documentation supporting Dialogic® DSI Signaling Server products is available on the web at:

<http://www.dialogic.com/support/helpweb/signaling>.

The product data sheet is available at:

<http://www.dialogic.com/support/helpweb/signaling>.

For more information on Dialogic® SS7 products and solutions, visit:

<http://www.dialogic.com/support/helpweb/signaling>.

When used for M3UA backhaul operation, the Signaling Gateway may operate with an ASP operating either a Dialogic® M3UA Application Server or an Application Server provided by a third party vendor. See the *Dialogic® SS7 Protocols Programmer's Manual for SIGTRAN Host Software* for documentation on the configuration and use of a Dialogic® M3UA Application Server.

1.3 Applicability

This manual is applicable to SS7G21 and SS7G22 with software version 5.14 and SS7G31 and SS7G32 products with software version 1.00.

This manual is not applicable if the Signaling Server is operating as a Signaling Interface Unit (SIU) or as a DSC Protocol Converter (DSC). See the *Dialogic® DSI Signaling Server SIU Mode User Manual* and the *Dialogic® SS7G2x Signaling Server DSC Mode User Manual* for descriptions use of these modes of operation.

1.4 Hardware Overview

The Signaling Gateway may be purchased as one of the following equipment types:

- An SS7G21 is a 2U Signaling Server and may be purchased with one, two, or three Dialogic® DSI SPC12S Network Interface Boards (where each board provides four SS7 links, two T1/E1 interfaces and two V.11 serial ports per board) or one, two or three Dialogic® DSI SPC14 Boards (where each board provides four SS7 links and four T1/E1 interfaces per board).
- An SS7G22 is a 2U Signaling Server and may be purchased with one, two or three Dialogic® DSI SS7HDP Network Interface Boards (where each board provides 64 SS7 links and four T1/E1 interfaces per board) with a system maximum of 128 SS7 links.
- An SS7G31 is a 1U Signaling Server and may be purchased with one Dialogic® DSI SPC14 Network Interface Board, (with 4 SS7 links and 4 T1/E1 interfaces), or one Dialogic® DSI SS7HDP Board, (with 64 SS7 links and 4 T1/E1 interfaces or 2 HSL links).
- An SS7G32 is a 2U Signaling Server and may be purchased with one, two or three SS7HDP Boards (with 64 links and 4 T1/E1 interfaces per board or 2 HSL links per board) with a system maximum of 192 LSL SS7 links or 6 HSL SS7 links.

When T1 or E1 is selected, the Signaling Gateway may be configured to pass the bearer channels from one PCM port to another, effectively "dropping out" the signaling in line.

The SS7G31 and SS7G32 support two hard disks configured as a RAID 1 array. Refer to [Section 7.7, "Hard Disk Management" on page 146](#) for details. See [Chapter 2, "Specification"](#) for a definition of the capabilities of the system.

1.4.1 Part Numbers

For the SS7G21 and SS7G22 products, refer to the *Dialogic® SS7G21 and SS7G22 Signaling Servers Hardware Manual* for a list of the ordering codes and definitions of all of the hardware variants.

For the SS7G31 and SS7G32 products, refer to the *Dialogic® DSI SS7G31 and SS7G32 Signaling Servers Product Data Sheet* (navigate from http://www.dialogic.com/products/signalingip_ss7components/signaling_servers_and_gateways.htm) for a list of the ordering codes and definitions of the hardware variants.

1.5 Connectivity

TDM SS7 signaling can interface to the Signaling Gateway using balanced 1544 kbit/sec (T1) balanced connections in accordance with G.733 or 2048 kbit/sec (E1) connections in accordance with G.703. SS7 signaling can also be presented on a V.11 (56/64 kbit/sec) synchronous serial interface.

MP2A signaling used for communication between paired Signaling Gateways can be received at the conveter using 4 x 1 Gbit/sec RJ45 Ethernet interfaces.

1.6 User Interface

The Signaling Gateway provides serial port and telnet connections for configuration and management. All ports provide identical functionality and operate using text-based MML (Man Machine Language) commands in accordance with CCITT recommendations.

The serial and telnet ports allow you to configure the Signaling Gateway for operation and to carry out subsequent modifications to the configuration. They allow you to read the current status of the various signaling entities and to view the current active alarms and a history of past alarm events.

The Signaling Gateway provides two levels of SNMP support:

- Basic V1 SNMP functionality which uses the DK4032 MIB and reports counts of current alarms to an SNMP manager.
- Enhanced SNMP functionality which offers SNMP V1, V2c and V3 SNMP. Enhanced SNMP supports SNMP traps and event reporting using the DSMI MIB.

See [Chapter 10, "Signaling Server SNMP"](#) for more information.

The Signaling Gateway has alarm indicators on the front panel and alarm relays for connection to an integrated management system.

1.7 Configuration and Program Storage

All configuration data is stored on hard disk and is automatically recovered after system restart. Configuration data may optionally be backed up to a remote computer, previously backed-up configurations can be reloaded.

The SS7G31 and SS7G32 products include two hard disks configured in a RAID array. Refer to [Section 7.7, "Hard Disk Management"](#) on page 146 for details.

All operating software is stored on hard disk and is automatically initiated after system restart. The operating software can be updated either by reading a new software release from FTP, USB device or CDRom. In both cases, software update is initiated by MML command. See [Section 4.11, "Updating System Software"](#) on page 31 for details. Following a software update, the Signaling Gateway automatically uses the saved configuration data so that there is no need to reenter the configuration parameters.

1.8 IP Security

The Signaling Gateway offers a number of security features to protect it from unwarranted access on its IP interface. It is recommended that you always enable the optional password protection on the management interface port and on the FTP server port (if used).

For additional security, the Signaling Gateway is also equipped to support telnet and FTP access using a Secure Shell (SSH).

Unused ports are disabled to increase security against unintentional or malicious interference.

Additional security may be gained by separating management and signaling IP traffic. This can be achieved by configuring specific Ethernet ports for traffic and utilizing other Ethernet ports for system management.

It should be understood that while the Signaling Gateway has been designed with security in mind, it is recommended that Signaling Gateway accessibility over IP be restricted to as small a network as possible. If the unit is accessible by third parties, the use of a third-party firewall should be considered.

1.9 Functional Summary

The functional summary is described in the following topics:

- [Signaling](#)
- [Configuration Model](#)
- [Cross Connections](#)
- [Monitoring](#)
- [Remote Data Centers](#)
- [Alarm Log](#)
- [Diagnostic Log Files](#)
- [M3UA Backhaul Operation](#)
- [M2PA Longhaul Operation](#)
- [Dual Operation](#)
- [Default Routing](#)
- [Resilience](#)

1.9.1 Signaling

The Signaling Gateway supports the Message Transfer Part (MTP) in accordance with ITU Recommendations Q.700, Q.704 and Q.707 and ANSI operation in accordance with ANSI T1.111.

When a link set contains two or more signaling links, the Signaling Gateway supports load sharing and the full changeover and changeback procedures in accordance with ITU-T Q.704.

The Signaling Gateway supports up to 256 TDM SS7 signaling links allowing the Signaling Gateway to interface over TDM to a maximum of 64 other signaling points.

The Signaling Gateway supports up to 256 M2PA SS7 signaling links, allowing the Signaling Gateway to interface over IP to a maximum of 256 other signaling points.

The Signaling Gateway can have a presence in up to six separate IP subnets.

M2PA is supported in accordance with the IETF SS7 MTP2-User Peer-to-Peer Adaptation Layer specification.

SCTP is supported in accordance with IETF RFC 2960 and RFC 3309 Stream Control Transmission Protocol.

The Signaling Gateway supports communication with up to 256 Application Servers Processes (ASPs) for backhaul operation over M3UA.

M3UA is supported in accordance with the IETF RFC 3332 SS7 MTP3 User Adaptation Layer.

1.9.2 Configuration Model

MTP data messages are considered to arrive at either an MTP3 **link set** or an M3UA **SIGTRAN link**. The link set or M3UA SIGTRAN link identifies the network and SS7 format of the message. MTP3 link sets can exist above a TDM MTP2 signaling link or a signaling link utilizing a M2PA SIGTRAN link for communication over IP.

The decision as to how to process the data message is performed by the incoming route. The **incoming route** is identified by the network and domain (either MTP or IP) from which a message arrives.

The incoming route then determines whether the message requires further analysis of the data prior to destination selection by looking up a **routing key** table or whether a **destination** can immediately be selected.

If the Signaling Gateway determines that a routing key table be looked up, the data from the data message is compared with routing keys in a routing key table. If a match is found, and the destination for that routing key is in service, that destination is used. Otherwise, if the incoming route also has a destination associated with it, that default destination is used. If no routing key table is associated with it, the default destination is used.

A destination can route a data message to either an **Remote Application Server (RAS)** or to MTP (MTP over MTP2 or MTP over M2PA). Selection of whether MTP or IP routing is used is determined by the availability of the data messages point code in the MTP or IP domain and whether MTP or IP has priority.

If MTP routing is selected, the data message is sent out on an MTP **SS7 route** that matches the point code of the data message. It is possible to configure MTP3 with a default route for use when it is undesirable to preconfigure all routes that are used.

See [Chapter 7, "Configuration Overview"](#) for a more detailed configuration discussion and [Chapter 11, "Worked Configuration Examples"](#) for some examples.

1.9.3 Cross Connections

The Signaling Gateway allows you to set up cross connections (semi-permanent connections) between an incoming timeslot on one PCM port and an outgoing timeslot on any PCM port. These connections can either be simplex or duplex.

1.9.4 Monitoring

The Signaling Gateway allows you to monitor TDM signaling links by dropping a copy of the signaling to a spare PCM port. This allows for a protocol analyzer to be left connected to one PCM port and gives you the ability to control remotely which signaling links are monitored. Each monitored signaling link requires two timeslots on the spare PCM port, one to monitor the send direction and the other for the receive direction.

1.9.5 Remote Data Centers

The Signaling Gateway supports the transfer of software updates, configuration files, alarm reports and periodic measurements over Ethernet to/from a remote location, the Remote Data Center (RDC).

Multiple RDCs can be configured by specifying an IP address and a user name and password for the Signaling Gateway to use to "logon" to the RDC.

Data transfer to the RDC uses the File Transfer Protocol (FTP).

Measurement reports are made on a configurable periodic basis.

Optionally, since it can be configured as an FTP server, the Signaling Gateway itself can be configured to act as an RDC, thus allowing RDC operation to be performed locally on the Signaling Gateway itself.

See [Chapter 9, "Remote Data Center Operation"](#) for a more detailed description of the capabilities and configuration of an RDC.

1.9.6 Alarm Log

The Signaling Server is able to detect a number of events or alarm conditions relating to either the hardware or the operation of the protocols. Each alarm condition is assigned a severity/class (3 = Critical, 4 = Major, 5 = Minor) and a category and ID, which give more detail about the alarm. There are a number of mechanisms described below, by which these conditions can be communicated to management systems, and ultimately to the system operator (see [Chapter 8, "Alarm Fault Code Listing"](#) for a full list of alarm types, and their reporting parameters):

- Active alarms are indicated on the front panel of the Signaling Server, (except SS7G31), with three LEDs identifying severity; CRT, MJR, MNR.
- Active alarms may be indicated remotely from the Signaling Server, (except SS7G31), when the alarm relay outputs are connected to a remote management system.
- Alarm events, configuration changes and system status may be reported to an SNMP manager(s). Refer to [Chapter 10, "Signaling Server SNMP"](#).
- A system operator can obtain a listing of the current alarm status (ID, class, fault title, occurrence time and title) using the **ALLIP** management terminal command described in [Section 6.4.4, "ALLIP" on page 51](#).
- A system operator can access a log of the current and previous alarms using the **ALLOP** management terminal command described in [Section 6.4.5, "ALLOP" on page 52](#). The Alarm Log has the capacity for up to 200 entries, each entry detailing the ID, title, alarm class, fault title, occurrence time, status (active or cleared), and cleared time (if appropriate). If a new fault occurs when the log is full, the oldest entry that is either cleared, of lower class, or equal class is overwritten, in that order of preference. The operator may request a display of the log at any time and may remove entries that have cleared status.
- The alarm log may also be reported to a Remote Data Center (RDC). See [Section 9, "Remote Data Center Operation" on page 153](#) for the configuration and operation of an RDC and for the format of the alarm log records.

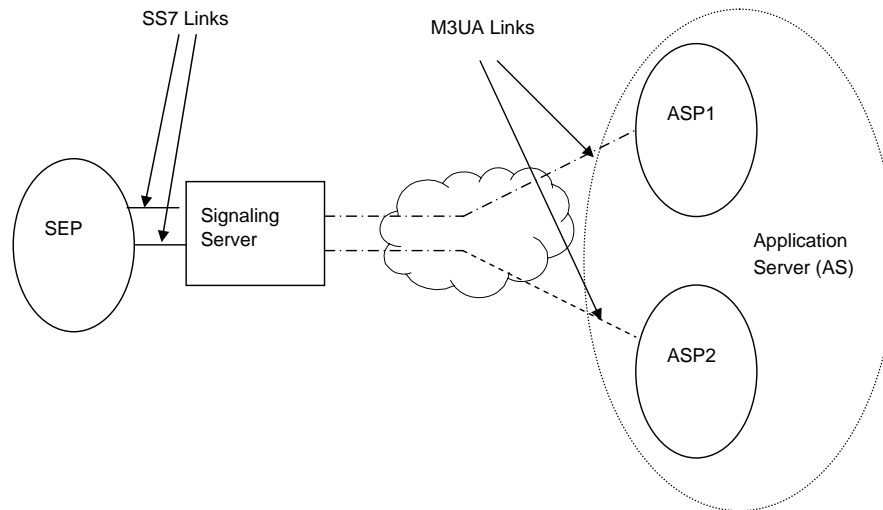
1.9.7 Diagnostic Log Files

Upon restart, the Signaling Server generates a number of diagnostic files. These files may aid the support channel in the analysis of severe errors, such as an unexpected system restart or particular alarms. The text files, **restart_gct.log**, **restart_top.log**, **restart_sensor.log**, **restart_ip.log** and **restart_disk.log** can be recovered from the syslog directory using FTP protocol as described below.

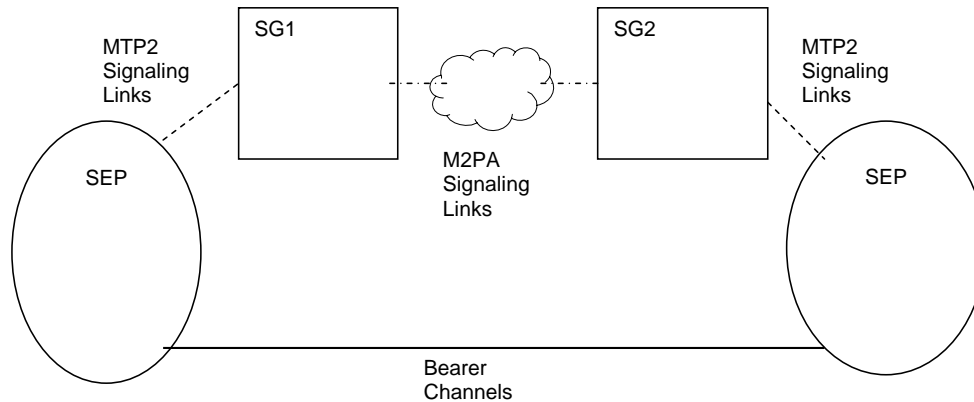
```
ftp 123.123.123.123
user siuftp
password siuftp (or the ftppwd as set by the CNSYS command)
cd syslog
ascii
get restart_gct.log
get restart_top.log
get restart_sensor.log
get restart_ip.log
get restart_disk.log
bye
```

1.9.8 M3UA Backhaul Operation

The Signaling Gateway can use the SIGTRAN protocol M3UA to "backhaul" SS7 information to an IP resident Remote Application Server (RAS) operating on one or more Application Server Processes (ASPs). Examples of Application Servers are Media Gateway Controllers or IP resident databases. In both cases, the Application Server can operate as a Signaling End Point (SEP), where SS7 User Part Protocols, such as SCCP or ISUP, operate above a M3UA layer on the host.

Figure 1. M3UA Backhaul Configuration**1.9.9 M2PA Longhaul Operation**

The Signaling Gateway is capable of replacing TDM SS7 links with signaling links operating over IP, providing the equivalent functionality to MTP Layer 2 by using the SIGTRAN M2PA protocol. One use of M2PA signaling links would be for the low cost longhaul of signaling traffic possibly involving SS7/SS7 protocol conversion. Two Signaling Gateways would be required, one either side of the IP connection translating between M2PA <-> MTP2. See [Chapter 11, "Worked Configuration Examples"](#) for an M2PA Longhaul configuration example.

Figure 2. M2PA Longhaul Configuration**1.9.10 Default Routing**

The Signaling Gateway may be configured to use default routing. This is designed to allow greater routing flexibility. See [Section 6.5, "Configuration Commands" on page 55](#) for further information regarding default routing.

1.9.11 Resilience

1.9.11.1 IP Resilience

The Signaling Servers support up to 6 IP ports. These ports may be configured with IP addresses in separate IP networks to allow greater IP resilience on the Signaling Gateway. IP addresses are configured using the **IPEPS** command, while the **IPGWI** command allows you to configure the default IP gateway for the unit or additional gateways.

As the Signaling Gateway supports static, rather than dynamic IP routing, the Signaling Gateway may not be configured with different IP addresses within the same IP network. Instead, resilience between two IP ports within the same network can be achieved by using IP port bonding, which allows two physical IP ports to be bonded together in an active/standby configuration under a single IP address. See [Section 7.6.1, "IP Port Bonding"](#) on page 143 for more information.

1.9.11.2 Dual Operation

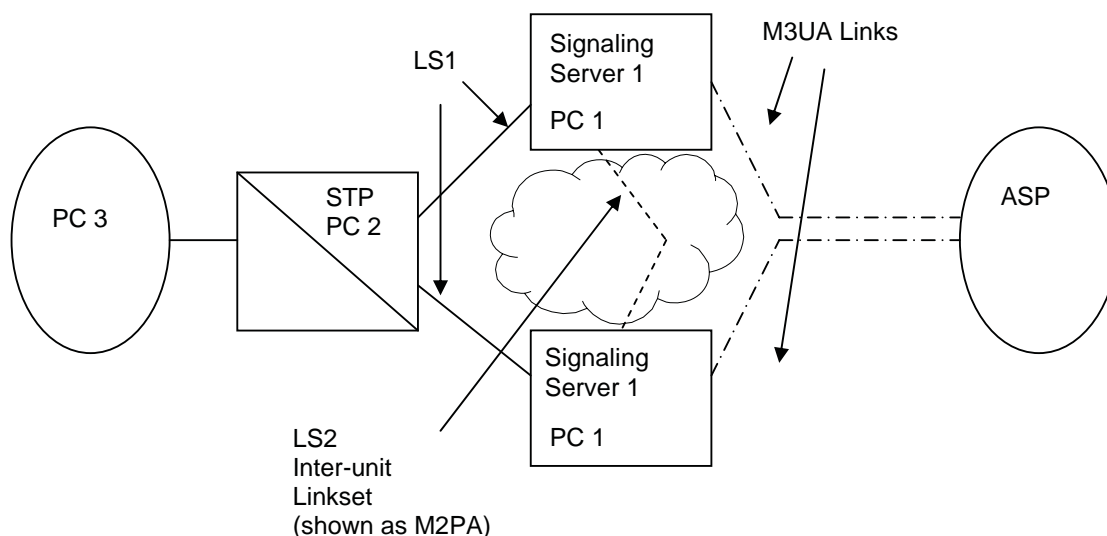
The Signaling Gateway may be configured as part of a Dual-Resilient pair; that is, two Signaling Server units appearing to the network as a single point code. If the SS7 network loses accessibility of one unit, the point code status remains unaffected.

Figure 3 shows a dual resilient system with two Signaling Server products connected to an STP in the SS7 network and an M3UA ASP. To achieve this configuration, the following additions to the normal configuration must be made:

1. The configuration of an inter-unit link set. This has the same **DPC** and **OPC**. This link set may consist of MTP2 links, M2PA links or a combination of both.
2. Each C7Route must be configured to use a preferred link set **LS1** and a backup link set **LS2**.
3. Each Signaling Server must be configured with a C7Route to the other Signaling Server using only **LS2**.

Note: Since both units have C7Links that are part of the same link set (from the perspective of the adjacent point code), care must be taken in the assignment of SLCs.

Figure 3. Dual Resilient Configuration



See [Chapter 7, "Configuration Overview"](#) for a more in depth discussion of Dual Resilient configuration.

Chapter 2: Specification

2.1 Hardware Specification

Details of the Signaling Gateway hardware specification are given in the *Dialogic® SS7G21 and SS7G22 Signaling Servers Hardware Manual* and the *Dialogic® DSI SS7G31 and SS7G32 Signaling Servers Hardware Manual*.

The Dialogic® DSI SS7G31, SS7G32, SS7G21 and SS7G22 Signaling Servers physically identify Ethernet ports in different ways. Below is a mapping between the Ethernet ports as it is identified in software, and the physical port as it is identified in its respective Hardware Manual:

Dialogic® DSI SS7G21 and SS7G22 Signaling Servers

Ethernet ports number in the range 1 to 4, where:

- ETH=1 corresponds to physical port ENET 1.
- ETH=2 corresponds to physical port ENET 2.
- ETH=3 corresponds to physical port ENET LNK A.
- ETH=4 corresponds to physical port ENET LNK B.

Dialogic® DSI SS7G31 Signaling Servers

Ethernet ports number in the range 1 to 4, where:

- ETH=1 corresponds to physical port 1.
- ETH=2 corresponds to physical port 2.
- ETH=3 corresponds to physical port 3.
- ETH=4 corresponds to physical port 4.

Dialogic® DSI SS7G32S Signaling Servers

Ethernet ports number in the range 1 to 6, where:

- ETH=1 corresponds to physical port 1.
- ETH=2 corresponds to physical port 2.
- ETH=3 corresponds to physical port ACT/LNK A (bottom).
- ETH=4 corresponds to physical port ACT/LNK B (bottom).
- ETH=5 corresponds to physical port ACT/LNK A (top).
- ETH=6 corresponds to physical port ACT/LNK B (top).

2.2 Software Licenses

This section identifies which licensable capabilities can be purchased for Signaling Server SGW Mode operation.

For information relating to the purchase, installation and activation of software licenses, see [Chapter 3, "Licensing, Installation and Initial Configuration"](#).

2.2.1 Software Licenses for the SS7G31 and SS7G32 Signaling Servers

The following SS7G30 licenses can be purchased for SGW mode.

| Item Market Name | Description |
|---|--|
| SS7SBG30SGWU | 16 MTP links, 16 M3UA links, 16 M2PA links. Up to 154 Kilobytes/sec throughput on SIGTRAN links - equivalent to 16 Low speed TDM links at 0.6 Erlangs. Includes DSMI SNMP |
| SS7SBG30SGWL | 64 MTP links, 64 M3UA links, 64 M2PA links. Up to 615 Kilobytes/sec throughput on SIGTRAN links - equivalent to 64 Low speed TDM links at 0.6 Erlangs. Includes DSMI SNMP |
| SS7SBG30SGWJ | 192 MTP links, 256 M3UA links, 256 M2PA links. Up to 2460 Kilobytes/sec throughput on SIGTRAN links - equivalent to 256 Low speed TDM links at 0.6 Erlangs. Includes DSMI SNMP |
| Throughput limit on a SGW license is available to either M3UA or M2PA. If both M3UA and M2PA are configured, then the available throughput allowance will be shared between the protocols such that the combined throughput does not exceed that which is specified by the license. | |

2.2.2 Software Licenses for the SS7G21 and SS7G22 Signaling Servers

The following SS7G20 licenses can be purchased for SGW mode.

| Item Market Name | Description |
|------------------|--|
| SS7SBG20SGW | Enable SGW functionality supporting up to 200 M3UA links |
| SS7SBG20M2PA | 32 M2PA links |

2.3 Capabilities

This section identifies key capabilities of the Signaling Server. The capabilities of a Signaling Server is dependent on the number and type of signaling boards installed as defined by the product variant as well as which software licenses installed.

Use of Signaling Servers in dual pairs increases the capacity of the overall system while still acting as a single SS7 point code. The numbers given in this section are for a single Signaling Server.

2.3.1 Dialogic® DSI SS7G31 and SS7G32 Signaling Servers Protocol Capabilities

| Feature or Protocol | SS7G31 Capabilities | SS7G32 Capabilities |
|--|---|---|
| Dialogic® DSI Network Interface Boards | Up to 1 SPC14 board or up to 1 SS7HDP board | Up to 3 SS7DHP boards or up to 3 SPC14 boards |
| Portable Media Device | USB | USB |
| PCM per board | 4 per SPC14 or 4 per SS7HDP | 4 per SS7HDP or 4 per SPC14 |
| V.11 ports per board | none | none |
| Ethernet interface | 4 | 6 |
| SS7 links per board | 4 per SPC14 or 64 per SS7HDP | 4 per SPC14 or 64 per SS7HDP |
| HSL links per board | 2 per SS7HDP | 2 |
| M3UA links | 256 | 256 |
| M2PA links | 256 | 256 |
| SS7 linksets | 64 | 64 |
| SS7 links | 256 | 256 |
| SS7 routes | 4096 | 4096 |

| Feature or Protocol | SS7G31 Capabilities | SS7G32 Capabilities |
|----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Remote application servers | 256 | 256 |
| M3UA routes | 256 | 256 |
| Network contexts | 4 | 4 |

2.3.2 Dialogic® DSI SS7G21 and SS7G22 Signaling Server Protocol Capabilities

| Feature or Protocol | SS7G21 Capabilities | SS7G22 Capabilities |
|----------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| Network Interface Boards | Up to 3 Dialogic® DSI SPC12S boards or up to 3 Dialogic® DSI SPC14 boards | Up to 3 Dialogic® DSI SS7HDP boards |
| Portable Media Device | CDROM | CDROM |
| PCM per board | 2 per SPC12S or 4 per SPC14 | 4 per SS7HDP |
| V.11 ports per board | 2 per SPC12S | none |
| Ethernet interface | 4 | 4 |
| SS7 links per board | 4 per SPC12S or 4 per SPC14 | 64 per SS7HDP |
| HSL links per board | none | 2 per SS7HDP |
| M3UA links | 200 | 200 |
| M2PA links | 32 | 32 |
| SS7 linksets | 64 | 64 |
| SS7 links | 128 | 128 |
| SS7 routes | 4096 | 4096 |
| Remote application servers | 200 | 200 |
| M3UA routes | 200 | 200 |
| Network contexts | 4 | 4 |

Chapter 3: Licensing, Installation and Initial Configuration

3.1 Software Licensing

Functional capabilities and signaling protocols are activated on the Signaling Server through the use of software licenses. The following section provides information on the purchase of software licenses as well as information relating to temporary operation of the Signaling Server without software licenses.

The full set of software licenses supported on the Signaling Server for SIU mode are identified in [Section 2.2, "Software Licenses"](#) on page 18.

3.1.1 Purchasing Software Licenses

You should place an order using your normal sales channel, quoting the *item market name* for the software option required.

At this point in the process, there is no need to know details of the specific Signaling Server on which the option is to be installed (the target Signaling Server).

The order ships through the normal supply channels and you receive a paper *License Certificate*. The certificate contains the full license terms for using the Signaling Server software option and a unique *License ID* that is needed to activate the license.

When the License Certificate is received, you should first read the full terms of the software license:

- If you do not agree with the software license terms, you must contact your sales channel for a refund and must not activate the software license.
- If you agree to the software license terms, you can continue with the process following.

The next stage is to identify the Signaling Server on which the software option is to be activated. To do this, it is necessary to obtain the UNIT ID for the Signaling Server, which is obtained by executing the [CNSYP](#) MML command on the target Signaling Server.

Once you have the License ID and the UNIT ID, the license can be activated on the Signaling Server. *License Activation* is the process of submitting the License ID and UNIT ID so that a *License File* can be generated and sent for installation on the target Signaling Server.

The License Activation process is web-based and the License File is sent by email.

You perform License Activation by visiting the web site:

<http://membersresource.dialogic.com/ss7/license/license.asp> (or an alternative URL if listed on the License Certificate).

You are asked to provide the following basic information:

- Name
- Company
- Country
- Email address (this is used to send the License File)

You are then asked for the following information about the Signaling Server:

- Operating System - Enter "Signaling Server".
- Host ID - Enter the UNIT ID.
- User Machine Identification (a string, typically the Signaling Gateway name, used by you to identify the Signaling Server).

You must list the License ID (taken from the License Certificate) for each protocol that is to be licensed on the target Signaling Server.

Once all this information has been entered, the form should be submitted. You receive confirmation that their request has been submitted. Subsequently, you receive your License File by email.

3.1.2 Temporary Licenses

A temporary software license can be issued for a spare or backup signaling server in the event that an existing server encounters a problem that requires the unit to be repaired or replaced. Alternatively, a new permanent license, based on the licenses from the failed unit, can be issued for a spare signaling server.

The process for obtaining a temporary license file is almost identical to that of activating a new license. On the web based activation form, the License IDs should be prefixed with the following 4 characters: **BAK-**.

For example, if the license ID on the certificate is **G20-ISUP-785-9187**, the license ID specified on the web form for the corresponding temporary license would be **BAK-G20-ISUP-785-9187**. The Host ID entered on the form is that of the replacement system on which the license will be installed.

A temporary license file will be sent to the email address you specify during license activation. A temporary license will allow operation of a spare/backup unit for a period of 30 days from date of issue, after which it will be impossible to restart the system software.

3.2 Installing the Signaling Gateway

Caution: The Signaling Gateway should only be installed by suitably qualified service personnel. Important safety and technical details, required for installation, are given in the *Dialogic® SS7G21 and SS7G22 Signaling Servers Hardware Manual* and the *Dialogic® DSI SS7G31 and SS7G32 Signaling Servers Hardware Manual*.

In order to complete the installation of the Signaling Gateway unit, follow the steps below:

1. Connect a VT100 terminal to the unit (see [Section 3.2.1](#)).
2. Set the IP addresses of the unit (see [Section 3.2.2](#)).
3. Download software from the Dialogic website (see [Section 3.2.3](#)).
4. Install any additional software option licenses that may have been purchased (see [Section 3.2.4](#) and [Section 3.2.5](#)).
5. Change the system type to act as a SIGTRAN Signaling Gateway (see [Section 3.2.6](#)).
6. Apply the configuration to the unit (see [Section 3.2.7](#)).

3.2.1 Connecting a VT100 Terminal

A VT100 compatible terminal can be connected, using a DKL29 cable, to the serial port (COM2) on the rear of the unit. After pressing the carriage return (Enter) key, the Signaling Gateway interface prompt is displayed. Default serial port settings are 9600 baud, 8 data bits, 1 stop bits and no parity bits.

The output on the VT100 screen is similar to one of the following:

```
SS7G20(SIU) logged on at 2004-01-20 14:52:29
<
```

to indicate SIU operation

OR

```
SS7G20(SGW) logged on at 2004-01-20 14:52:29
<
```

to indicate SGW operation

OR

```
SS7G20(DSC) logged on at 2004-01-20 14:52:29
<
```

to indicate DSC operation.

3.2.2 IP Configuration

The Signaling Gateway is configured with a default IP address of 192.168.0.1. If this address is not unique, or not suitable for the existing network configuration, it is necessary to change this value to a unique IP address in the Ethernet network to which it is connected. Instructions for making this change are given below.

Using the VT100-compatible terminal, the IP address is set by entering the system configuration command, **IPEPS**. For example, to set the IP address to 123.124.125.126, the following command should be entered:

```
IPEPS:ETH=1,IPADDR=123.124.124.126;
```

It is also possible to configure a subnet mask if the unit is a member of a subnet. The default subnet mask is 255.255.255.0. To set the subnet mask to a different value, the following command should be used (the example here sets a subnet mask of 255.255.255.192):

```
IPEPS:ETH=1,SUBNET=255.255.255.192;
```

The management interface also allows an IP default gateway address to be specified using the GATEWAY parameter on the IPGWx command (see [Section 6.7, "IP Commands" on page 86](#)).

This is set by default to 0.0.0.0, indicating that no default gateway is present. For example, to set the gateway address to 123.124.125.250, the following command is used:

```
IPGWI:IPGW=DEFAULT,GATEWAY=123.124.124.250;
```

The current settings can be displayed by entering the **IPEPP** and the **IPGWP** command.

After changes using the IPEPS or IPGWI commands new IP parameters are initialized *with immediate effect*. If the IP address used to login to the unit for the telnet session is changed, you are automatically logged out of the session. However, you can log in again without delay using the new IP address.

The Ethernet connection should be verified by attempting to "ping" the SGW from a computer connected to the same Ethernet network, using the following command:

```
ping 123.124.125.126
```

If the Signaling Gateway has been configured correctly, it responds to the ping and the host machine displays a message confirming communication with the Signaling Gateway (the exact format and response of this message is operating system dependant).

If ping fails, you should check that the IP address was entered correctly and that there is no fault with the cabling to the Signaling Gateway.

Once the ping command shows that the Ethernet connection is valid, it should be possible to access the management interface previously used on the VT100 compatible terminal via telnet. This is achieved by establishing a telnet session to port 8100 or 8101.

Note: It is not possible to telnet to the standard telnet port 23.

For example, on a typical host console, the following command starts a telnet session to a Signaling Gateway with an IP address of 123.124.125.126:

```
telnet 123.124.125.126 8100
```

The telnet terminal displays the MML interface prompt:

```
SS7G20(SGW) logged on at 2004-01-20 14:52:29
```

```
<
```

An optional password can be set to control remote access to the MML. This is done using the **CNSYS** command:

```
CNSYS:PASSWORD=password,CONFIRM=password;
```

If set, a user opening a telnet session to the MML is prompted to enter a password, for example:

```
SS7G20(SGW) logged on at 2004-01-20 14:52:29  
password:
```

Password access can be removed by specifying "null" values for the **PASSWORD** and **CONFIRM** parameters, that is:

```
CNSYS:PASSWORD=,CONFIRM=;
```

For additional security, the units support the use of Secure Shell (SSH) tunnelling for telnet and secure FTP operation. The user should use the **CNSYS** command to restrict telnet access to "telnet via SSH tunnelling" only. For example:

```
CNSYS:SECURE=Y;
```

Note: The unit does not provide a Secure Shell session connection. Your SSH client may need additional configuration to allow SSH tunnelling without a session connection.

Once activated, a future user is required to set up an SSH tunnel prior to telnet access. For a client on a Linux or Solaris like operating system, login for telnet using the **ssh** application. The **ssh** application should be invoked using a shellscript of the following form:

```
#!/bin/sh  
ssh -l siuftp -C -f $1 -L 2323:$1:8101 sleep 5  
telnet localhost 2323
```

3.2.3 Software Download

Current information and software downloads for the Dialogic® DSI Signaling Server products can be found at the following URL:

<http://www.dialogic.com/support/helpweb/signaling>

The product leaves the factory with fully-functional software installed. We recommend you check the above URL for any recent revisions, and install them before putting the product into service.

Since it is possible to source units from multiple supply channels, we recommend that each is checked to verify that all units in a delivery are at the same software revision.

Follow the steps below:

1. Check the current software version running in the system using the **CNSWP** command.
2. Check the latest distribution file from the "Signaling Gateway" section on the SS7 Products download web site:
<http://www.dialogic.com/support/helpweb/signaling>
3. If a download is required, store the distribution file in an empty directory on the hard drive of the downloading machine.
4. Follow the steps detailed in [Section 4.11, "Updating System Software" on page 31](#) in order to carry out the update of the system software.

3.2.4 Installing Software Licenses

This section describes how additional licenses are installed on the Signaling Server. Each Signaling Server is licensed to run specific components of the protocol stack. The **STLCP** command provides a printout that shows which components are licensed on a particular unit. Each unit is uniquely identified by a unit identity value, which is displayed as the UNITID parameter in the **CNSYP** command output.

The License File, purchased as described in this chapter, is a simple text file. The contents of the file are similar to the following:

```
FEATURE SGW_U_G30 dialogic 1.000 permanent uncounted \
HOSTID=000e0de513c4 SIGN="00ED 17C4 1197 F91E E36F D5F5 9371 \
1600 2CC9 8AF4 82C9 3AF5 F1C6 9329 B5CD"
```

Normal operation of the license update procedure uses MML to update the system's purchasable licenses with the file taken directly from a Remote Data Center (RDC).

The procedure to install licenses from system start is as follows:

1. Rename the purchased license file to sgw.lic.
2. Establish an FTP session (see [Section 4.9, "FTP Access" on page 30](#)).
3. Set the FTP transfer mode to "ASCII", since the license file is a text file.
4. Transfer the software license to the Signaling Gateway by typing the command "put sgw.lic sgw.lic".

Note: The Signaling Gateway uses a case-sensitive file system. Therefore, it is necessary to specify sgw.lic in lowercase.

5. Terminate the FTP session by entering "quit" or "bye".
6. Establish an MML session and restart the unit by typing the following command:

```
MNRSI:RESTART=SOFT,SYSTYPE=SGW;
```

The machine then boots and completes the upgrade. Once the upgrade is complete, the machine is accessible via MML.

7. Check the licenses using the **STLCP** command.

Note: If the licensing upgrade fails, the unit restores the previous licensing level.

3.2.5 License Update from Remote Data Center

The procedure to perform a license update from the a Remote Data Center (RDC) is as follows:

1. The user should enter:

```
CNUPI:DTYPE=LICENSE,RDC=<rdc id>,DIRECTORY=<subdirectory>;
```

to request that the license be updated from a RDC where the license file is stored in a subdirectory in the ftproot.

2. Once you have confirmed that the license should be updated, the license file is transferred to the Signaling Gateway without further interaction with the user. The unit indicates that the file has been successfully transferred by displaying the "EXECUTED" response to the **CNUPI** command.
3. Establish an MML session and restart the unit by typing the following command:

```
MNRSI:RESTART=SOFT;
```

The machine then boots and completes the upgrade. Once the upgrade is complete, the machine is accessible via MML.

4. Check the licenses using the **STLCP** command.

3.2.6 Changing System Operation Mode

By default, the Signaling Gateway is shipped configured to operate in TEST mode. Once an SGW license has been applied, the system must be restarted using the **MNRSI** MML command requesting that the unit operate in SGW mode. Connect a VT100 terminal to identify the mode of operation (See [Section 3.2.1, "Connecting a VT100 Terminal" on page 22](#)).

The **MNRSI** restart command should be used to restart the system in a different mode. **MNRSI** should be used together with the mode in which the Signaling Gateway is expected to operate in after restart. For SGW operation this is:

```
MNRSI:RESTART=SOFT,SYSTYPE=SGW;
```

3.2.7 Configuration Procedure

Once the system architecture and protocol configuration is known, it is necessary to set this configuration within the Signaling Gateway. Configuration is achieved using MML commands as described in [Chapter 6, "Command Definitions"](#). An overview of configuration is provided in [Chapter 7, "Configuration Overview"](#) and example configurations are described in [Chapter 11, "Worked Configuration Examples"](#).

Chapter 4: Operation

4.1 General

The Signaling Gateway can be configured from either serial port 2 (COM2, on the rear panel) or by using telnet over the Ethernet interface. The serial port can be configured over a range of baud rates and parity. The default configuration for the port is 9600 bits/s, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, and no parity. Serial port 1 (COM1, on the front panel) is not supported on the Signaling Server. Flow control can be set to either NONE or XON/XOFF on the terminal used to communicate with the serial interface of the Signaling Server.

The commands that make up the Signaling Gateway Man-Machine Interface Language (MML) are based on the CCITT blue book recommendations Z.311 to Z.317.

In the following description, input text, numerals and characters that you are expected to enter are shown in **bold text** and responses displayed on the screen are shown in fixed width text. Syntax elements that are further defined are shown in angle brackets, for example, <time of day>.

4.2 Log On/Off Procedure

To initiate a dialog with the Signaling Gateway, the operator must “log on” to one of the MML interfaces.

To log on to the serial port when it is configured to use DTR/DSR, the connected terminal should assert DSR. The Signaling Gateway asserts DTR in response and you can then enter into a dialog with the Signaling Gateway. The session is ended by operator command to the Signaling Gateway, or by the terminal deasserting DSR or at the expiry of an auto log off timer. The Signaling Gateway deasserts DTR in response to any one of these three. To log on again, DSR must first be deasserted.

To log on to the serial port when it is not configured to use DTR/DSR, the carriage return key should be entered. The session is ended by operator command to the Signaling Gateway or at the expiry of an auto log off timer.

The two telnet connections provided are accessed using a standard telnet utility. Only ports 8100 and 8101 can be used. The default port 23 should **not** be used.

If a password is specified for the system, when logging on, the password is required before being allowed to continue. If an incorrect password is entered, the system again prompts for a password. If an incorrect password is entered three times, the port is disconnected. For safety, the password is never required on the serial port.

When the connection is established, a message consisting of the system identity followed by:

```
logged on at <calendar date> <time of day>
```

is displayed, followed by the command prompt, which is the less than symbol (<). The logon session is ended either by operator command or at the end of an auto log off time out.

The system maintains two timers during the log on session: an “auto log off warning” timer and a “auto log off” timer. Both are restarted each time a new command is input. When the auto log off warning time out expires, an auto log off warning message is output to the terminal and any partially entered command is discarded. The system then outputs a command prompt to the terminal. If no command is input before the auto log off time out expires, the log on session is ended. The duration of both these timers is user-configurable and can even be disabled completely.

When log off is initiated, a message consisting of the system identity followed by:

```
logged off at <calendar date> <time of day>
```

is output to the operator’s terminal. The Signaling Gateway then initiates the appropriate procedure to end the connection to the operator’s terminal.

4.3 Command Character Set and Syntax

The only characters used for commands and parameters are:

- The letters **A** to **Z** and **a** to **z**, referred to as <letter>. The case of characters in command names and parameter names is not significant.
- The digits **0** to **9**, referred to as <digit>
- - (hyphen), CR (FE5), SP (space), \$(dollar), & (ampersand), * (asterisk), : (colon), ; (semicolon) / (solidus), . (full stop/period) and = (equals sign)
- The DEL (Delete) character or the BS (Backspace) character is used to delete characters on the current line.
- The CAN character (Ctrl X) is used as an abort character.

It is possible to indicate several simple values for the same parameter by grouping parameter arguments using the operators **&** or **&&**. For example, **3&6** indicates the simple parameter arguments 3 and 6. A sequence of consecutive simple parameter arguments is indicated by writing the lower and upper simple parameter arguments separated by **&&**, hence **4&&8** indicates the simple parameter arguments 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8.

Comments are allowed in command input, and can appear in any position on the command line. A comment is defined as a character string enclosed between the separators **/*** (solidus asterisk) and ***/*** (asterisk solidus), where the character string can contain any characters except the format effector characters (HT – Horizontal Tab, LF – Line Feed, VT – Vertical Tab, FF – Form Feed and CR – Carriage Return) and the sequence ***/**.

4.4 Command Formats

To allow easy command recognition and familiarization, all the commands share a common five character format:

XXYYZ

where:

- XX = Command group
- YY = Function within group
- Z = Operation code

The following operation codes are used:

- **C** = Change
- **E** = End
- **I** = Initiate
- **P** = Print
- **S** = Set

Note: The term “print” refers to output to the serial port in use for the dialog procedure.

4.5 Command Entry

Each character entered is echoed to the operator's terminal. The BS (backspace) or DEL (delete) character can be used to delete characters entered within the current line. This causes the Signaling Gateway to output the sequence BS space BS. On a visual display terminal, this has the effect of deleting the last character entered from the display.

Commands can be entered whenever the command prompt has been output. Commands are terminated by a semicolon (;) followed by CR. Commands may exceed one line on the terminal, but may not exceed 100 characters.

If a command takes parameters, a colon is used to separate the command from the parameters. A comma (,) is used to separate multiple parameters.

To ensure correct operation of the character deletion, the maximum number of characters entered on a single command line should be no greater than the number of characters that can be displayed on a single line of the terminal (to prevent text "wrap around"). If a command is longer than one line, each line before the last should be terminated with a complete parameter value followed by a comma and CR. The command can then continue on the next line. If you wish to specify more parameters than can be entered on a single initiate command, you should use the initiate command to enter mandatory parameters, then use a change command to specify additional parameters.

A partially entered command can be aborted using the CAN character. The system outputs an indication that the command has been aborted, followed by a prompt for new command input. The CAN character can also be used to abort an output listing on the operators terminal.

4.6 Dangerous Commands

Commands that affect the Signaling Gateway operation are considered DANGEROUS commands. If a DANGEROUS command is entered, the Signaling Gateway outputs the following on a new line:

```
Are you sure? [Y/N]
```

The operator must enter **Y** followed by CR to continue the execution of the command. Any other valid input character apart from SP or CR, followed by CR, causes the command to be aborted.

4.7 Changing Configuration Data

Many configuration commands require that certain other commands have been entered first (for example to block a link before removing a boards configuration). These rules are described on a per-command basis as prerequisites.

4.8 Command Responses

The Signaling Gateway does not, in general, produce output unless it is in response to an operator command. The only exception to this is the auto log off warning message and the log off message (when log off is initiated automatically).

The auto log off warning message is as follows:

```
WARNING: Auto log off imminent!
```

When a syntactically correct command has been issued to the Signaling Gateway, acceptance is indicated by the Command Executed output as follows:

```
EXECUTED
```

An invalid command is not acted upon. The Signaling Gateway indicates command rejection by issuing one of the responses in [Table 1](#). Only the first error detected in a command is indicated.

Table 1. Command Rejection Responses

| Response | Reason for Rejection |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| CONFIGURATION EXCEEDS LICENSE LIMITS | The entity being configured exceeds the limits of the license installed on the system. |
| EXTRA PARAMETERS | Too many parameters have been entered. |
| GENERAL ERROR | Command unable to execute due to an external error (for example, a missing or write-protected CDROM). |
| ILLEGAL COMMAND | The command is invalid for the mode of operation. |
| INCONSISTENT DATA | The values of parameters are inconsistent with each other or with data already entered into the system. |
| INCONSISTENT PARAMETER | The parameters input are not valid together for the command. |
| INTERNAL ERROR | Command failed to complete due to internal error. |
| INVALID INDICATOR | This command contains a 'format character' (':', ';', etc.) that is not valid for this command. |
| INVALID INFORMATION GROUPING | The type of information grouping used in the input of the parameter value is not valid. |
| INVALID INFORMATION UNIT | The value entered for a parameter is not valid for that parameter. |
| INVALID PARAMETER NAME | A parameter name has been entered that is not valid for this command. |
| MISSING DATA | A parameter has no data. |
| MISSING PARAMETER | A required parameter has not been input. |
| NO SYSTEM RESOURCES | The requested command cannot be executed due to unavailable system resources. |
| RANGE ERROR | The value assigned to a numeric parameter is outside the valid range. |
| UNACCEPTABLE COMMAND | The command is valid but not in the current state of the equipment (for example, changing a signaling link configuration without blocking). |
| UNKNOWN COMMAND | The command is not recognized. |
| UNKNOWN SEPARATOR | The character used to separate two parameters is not recognized. |

4.9 FTP Access

The Signaling Gateway supports FTP server operation allowing you to perform maintenance operations, such as software, license and configuration update without the use of MML as well as providing access to locally stored continuous records and periodic reports.

An FTP session should be established between the remote machine and the Signaling Gateway by entering the appropriate command on the remote machine's keyboard, for example:

```
ftp 123.124.125.125
```

The FTP server can be activated or deactivated using the **FTPSE** parameter on the **CNSYS** command.

The appropriate user name and password to use depends on whether the **FTPPWD** option has been set to Y using the **CNSYS** MML command.

When **FTPPWD** = Y, FTP access must use the fixed user name "siuftp" in conjunction with the normal MML access password as configured by setting the **CNSYS** parameter **PASSWORD**.

Access to the Signaling Gateway using other user accounts except "siuftp" is denied. Note also that access is denied if **FTPPWD** = Y, but there is no MML password.

When **FTPPWD**=N, no FTP access is permitted. Access with "siuftp" or any other user account is disabled. Therefore, you are strongly advised to activate FTP password security.

The state of **FTPPWD** can be viewed using the **CNSYP** command.

For additional security, the Signaling Gateway supports the use of Secure Shell (SSH) access for FTP operation. The user should use the **CNSYS** command to allow only secure FTP access to the unit, for example:

```
CNSYS:SECURE=Y;
```

For a client on a UNIX operating system, the command sequence to log in for FTP access using the sftp application is:

```
sftp -l ftp@<IP Address>
```

The user is also prompted to enter the password for the siuftp login account.

The secure connection to a unit can also be established from Windows® operating system using the appropriate SSH software.

4.10 Backing Up System Software

The user can backup a binary copy of the Signaling Gateway software for restoration later.

4.10.1 Software Backup to a Remote Data Center

The procedure to perform a software backup to an Remote Data Center (RDC) is as follows:

1. The user should enter:

```
CNBUI: RDC=<rdc id>, DTYPE=SOFTWARE,  
        DIRECTORY=<subdirectory>, FILE=<filename>;
```

to request that the software be backed up to an RDC where the software file <filename.tgz> is stored in a subdirectory in the ftproot.

Note: The user should **not** use a filename of "sgw" when backing up to the local RDC.

The unit indicates that the configuration has been successfully backed up by displaying the "EXECUTED" response to the **CNBUI** command.

4.11 Updating System Software

The configuration data, stored in non-volatile memory, is not affected by a software update.

Normal operation of the software update procedure uses MML to update the software. While a software update can take place while phone calls are in progress, the new software is not activated until the system is restarted.

On completion of the software update, you must perform a system restart. MML commands are restricted to the following "safe" mode commands: **CNSYS**, **CNUPI**, **CNBUI** and **STRDP** commands, as well as the alarm log and configuration print commands.

If you abort the software update or the software update process fails, the system alarm "SW mismatch" is activated and you are restricted to "safe" mode commands. If you restart the system in this state, the system restarts in "safe" mode running limited configuration only software.

Note: Prior to performing a system upgrade, it is recommended that you make a backup of the system configuration using the procedures specified in [Section 4.12, "Backing Up Configuration Data" on page 33](#).

4.11.1 Software Update from a Remote Data Center

The procedure to perform a software update from a Remote Data Center (RDC) is as follows:

1. The user should enter:

```
CNUPI:DTYPE=SOFTWARE,RDC=<rdc id>,  
      DIRECTORY=<subdirectory>,FILE=<filename>;
```

to request that the software be updated from a RDC where the software update files are stored in a subdirectory in the ftproot.

Note: The directory and filename are optional and when not used the system looks for the file `sgw.tgz` in the ftproot directory. If `<filename>` is specified, it should be specified without an extension.

2. Once you have confirmed that the software should be upgraded, the distribution file is transferred to the Signaling Gateway without further interaction with the user. The unit indicates that the file has been successfully transferred by displaying the "EXECUTED" response to the `CNUPI` command.
3. On completion, you should restart the system by executing the `MNRSI` command.

4.11.2 Software Update from Portable Media

The following procedure assumes that a CD-ROM or USB drive with the updated software has already been created. Perform the software update as follows:

1. Insert the CD or USB into the Signaling Server.
2. Enter the following command:

```
CNUPI:DTYPE=SOFTWARE,DIRECTORY=<subdirectory>,FILE=<filename>;  
to request that the software be updated from the media.
```

Note: The directory and filename are optional and when not used the system looks for the file `sgw.tgz` in the root directory.

3. Prompts are displayed asking first if you are certain that you wish to upgrade the software and then to insert the portable media.

The software is uploaded from the distribution portable media to the Signaling Gateway. The unit indicates that all files have been successfully transferred by displaying the "EXECUTED" response to the `CNUPI` command.

Following installation, the CD will be ejected from the CD-ROM drive to prevent the updates being overwritten in subsequent restarts.

4. The user should restart the system by entering the MML command `MNRSI`.

4.11.3 Software Update from Startup

You are also able to update the software from system start. Installation of software from system start is not normal operating procedure and should only be used if you are unable to install software via MML. A failed installation of software from system start can result in the system failing to operate. The procedure to install software from system start using either FTP or portable media is as follows:

Software Update from Startup Using FTP

1. Rename the software distribution to `sgw.tgz`.
2. Establish an FTP session (see [Section 4.9, "FTP Access" on page 30](#)).
3. Set the FTP transfer mode to "Binary", since the software file is a binary file.
4. Transfer the software to the Signaling Gateway by typing the command `"put sgw.tgz sgw.tgz"`.

Note: The Signaling Gateway uses a case-sensitive file system. Therefore, it is necessary to specify `sgw.tgz` in lowercase.

5. Terminate the FTP session by entering `"quit"` or `"bye"`.

6. Establish an MML session and restart the unit by typing the **MNRSI** command.
The machine then boots and completes the upgrade. Once the upgrade is complete, the machine is accessible via the MML.
7. Check the software version using the **CNSWP** command.

Software Update from Startup Using a CD or USB Drive

1. Insert the portable media into the Signaling Server.
2. Restart the system.
The new software is installed and started automatically.

4.12 Backing Up Configuration Data

You can backup a binary copy of the Signaling Gateway configuration for restoration later.

4.12.1 Configuration Backup to Remote Data Center

The procedure to perform a configuration backup to an RDC is as follows:

1. You should enter:

```
CNBUI:RDC=<rdc id>, DTYPE=CONFIG,  
      DIRECTORY=<subdirectory>, FILE=<filename>;
```

to request that the configuration be backed up to an RDC where the configuration file <filename.CF3> is stored in a subdirectory in the ftproot.

Note: You should **not** use a filename of "SDC" when backing up to the local RDC.

The unit indicates that the configuration has been successfully backed up by displaying the "EXECUTED" response to the **CNBUI** command.

4.13 Updating Configuration Data

Valid configuration data can be stored by the Signaling Gateway at a Remote Data Center (RDC) using the **CNBUI** command (see [Section 4.12](#)), on portable media (USB or CD) or on a remote machine accessible via FTP. This configuration data can then be restored as described in the following subsections.

4.13.1 Configuration Update from a Remote Data Center

The procedure to perform a configuration update from a Remote Data Center (RDC) is as follows:

1. You should enter:

```
CNUPI:DTYPE=CONFIG,RDC=<rdc id>,  
      DIRECTORY=<subdirectory>, FILE=<filename>;
```

to request that the configuration be updated from a RDC where the configuration update file <filename.CF3> is stored in a subdirectory in the ftproot.

Note: The directory and filename are optional and when not used the system looks for the SDC.CF3 file in the ftproot directory.

The unit indicates that the configuration has been successfully transferred by displaying the "EXECUTED" response to the **CNUPI** command.

2. You should then restart the system by entering the MML command **MNRSI**.

4.13.2 Configuration Update from Portable Media

The procedure for a configuration update from a CD or USB device using MML is as follows:

1. You should enter:

```
CNUPI:DTYPE=CONFIG, DIRECTORY=<subdirectory>, FILE=<filename>;
```

to request that the configuration file be updated from CD or USB.

Note: The directory and filename are optional and when not used the system looks for the SDC.CF3 file in the CD or USB root directory.

The configuration file is uploaded from CD or USB. The unit indicates that the configuration has been successfully updated by displaying the “EXECUTED” response to the CNUPI command.

Following updates, the CD will be ejected from the CD-ROM drive to prevent updates being overwritten on subsequent restarts.

2. You should then restart the system by entering the MML command MNRSI.

4.13.3 Configuration Update from Startup

You are also able to install a previously backed-up system configuration from system start.

Note: Installation of configuration from system start is not normal operating procedure and should only be used if you are unable to install configuration via MML. A failed installation of configuration from system start can result in the complete loss of system configuration.

The procedures to install configuration from system start using either FTP or CD are described below.

Configuration Update from Startup using FTP

1. Rename the binary configuration file to SDC.CF3.
2. Establish an FTP session (see [Section 4.9, “FTP Access” on page 30](#)).
3. Set the FTP transfer mode to “Binary”, since the configuration file is a binary file.
4. Transfer the configuration to the Signaling Gateway by entering the command “put SDC.CF3 SDC.CF3”.

Note: The Signaling Gateway uses a case-sensitive file system. Therefore, it is necessary to specify SDC.CF3 in uppercase.

5. Terminate the FTP session by entering “quit” or “bye”.
6. Establish an MML session and restart the unit by typing the MNRSI command.
The machine then boots and completes the upgrade. Once the upgrade is complete, the machine is accessible via the MML.

Configuration Update from Startup using CD or USB

1. Insert the CD or USB containing the configuration file SDC.CF3 into the Signaling Server.
2. Restart the system.
The new configuration is installed and started automatically.

4.14 Creating a System Archive

A system archive comprising the binary configuration file, installed software licenses and current software binary distribution file can be created on the Signaling Server portable media (CDROM or USB device) and later used to restore the system to current working status.

As the Signaling Server starts up a copy is created of the following system files which are stored in the syslog subdirectory of the siuftp account.

Table 2. System Files Stored in the syslog Subdirectory

| File | Description |
|------------|---|
| sgw.tgz | A binary file containing the current software distribution on the system. |
| sgw.lic | A text file containing the current software licenses active on the system, if present. |
| modcap | A binary file containing a software license allowing SS7G2x operating software to function on this particular system. |
| config.CF1 | A binary configuration file containing dynamically configurable data that is common to all modes of operation. IP address configuration and parameters set by the CNSYS command would for example be stored in this file. |
| config.txt | The text configuration file for a SIU, if present. |
| SDC.CF3 | The binary configuration file for a SGW, if present. |
| SDC.CF4 | The binary configuration file for a DSC, if present. |

The files can be recovered from the syslog directory using FTP as described below:

```
ftp 192.168.0.1user siuftp password *****cd syslog
ascii get config.txt get sgw.lic bin get sgw.tgz get sgw.lic get modcap get config.CF1 get SDC.CF3 get
SDC.CF4 bye
```

To create the archive all the files can be transferring to an ISO9660 format CD or USB device. To check that the archive media device has been created without error - return the device to the unit and enter the following command:

```
CNUPI:DTYPE=SYSKEY;
```

If this command returns 'EXECUTED', then the media contains a valid software license.

4.15 Restoring System Archive

The Signaling Server is restored to the archived software, configuration and licensing states when the archive portable media device is placed in the appropriate drive and the system is re-booted.

On re-boot, the system will restore all files from the portable media device to the system. Configuration files from the portable media will overwrite any in the SIUFTP directory.

Note: Once the system has been restored you must ensure that the portable media device is removed from the unit, otherwise on subsequent re-boot the system will reinstall the archive files.

If the user changes dynamically configurable data on the system using MMI (i.e., MMI commands are described in this manual with the attribute 'CONFIG'), a new configuration backup can be added to the syslog directory in the siuftp account. To do this without restarting the system, enter the following command:

```
CNBUI:DTYPE=SYSCFG;CNBUI:DTYPE=CONFIG;
```

Following this command, a new CD archive should be created following the procedures identified in [Section 4.14, "Creating a System Archive" on page 35](#).

Note: The user can also re-install any of the previously backed-up system files (identified in [Section 4.14, "Creating a System Archive" on page 35](#)), or install a new text configuration file using FTP rather than from portable media. In this case, files can transferred to the unit by FTP.

Chapter 5: Parameter Definitions

5.1 Parameter Table

Table 3 lists parameters and details the possible values.

All numeric parameters are entered and output in decimal notation.

<text character> is either <lower case letter>, <upper case letter>, <digit>, \$, or -. The use of quotation marks to delimit text strings is not required.

Table 3. Parameter Definitions

| Name | Description | Range | Notes |
|----------|---|---|--|
| ALP | Sequential reference number of an entry in the Alarm Log | 1 to 9999 | |
| AUTH | V3 SNMP Authentication encryption protocol - used to ensure that V3 SNMP requests have not be modified during transit. | Set to SHA or MD5 | |
| AUTHPASS | SNMP V3 User account Authentication password. | 8 to 12 | Must be set if the AUTH parameter is set. |
| BCIC | The circuit identification code of an SS7 circuit that is the base CIC of a CIC Range | 0 to 4095 | |
| BPOS | Board position number (for signaling boards) | 1 to 3 | |
| BRDTYPE | Dialogic® DSI Network Interface Board type descriptor, in the format: xxxxxx-y-z where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> xxxxxx = board type y = number of signaling links configured on the board z = number of PCM ports on the board See Section 5.4, "Dialogic® DSI Network Interface Board Types" on page 48. | One of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> SPCI2S-4-2 SPCI2S-8-2 SPCI4-4-4 SPCI4-8-4 SS7HDP-64-4 | |
| BUILDOUT | The buildout type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 - Setting for E1 devices. 1 - T1 short haul 0 - 110 ft. 2 - T1 short haul 0 - 110 ft. 3 - T1 short haul 110 - 220 ft. 4 - T1 short haul 220 - 330 ft. 5 - T1 short haul 330 - 440 ft. 6 - T1 short haul 440 - 550 ft. 7 - T1 short haul 550 - 660 ft. 8 - T1 long haul LB0 (-0dB) 9 - T1 long haul LB0 (-7.5dB) 10 - T1 long haul LB0 (-15dB) 11 - T1 long haul LB0 (0dB TR62411) | 0 to 11 | Default = <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 for E1 1 for T1 |
| C7LINK | Logical reference for an SS7 signaling link | 1 to 256 | |
| C7RT | Logical reference of an SS7 route | 1 to 4096 | |
| CLA | Alarm class number. One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 = Unreported (the alarm is logged, but it does not trigger an alarm relay and is not included in SNMP output. 5 = Minor (triggering the MNR alarm LED and relay) 4 = Major (triggering the MJR alarm LED and relay) 3 = Critical (triggering the CRT alarm LED and relay) | 0, 3, 4, 5 | |

Table 3. Parameter Definitions (Continued)

| Name | Description | Range | Notes |
|-----------|--|--|---|
| CODE | Fault code of a system alarm | 1 to 256 | |
| CONFIRM | Confirmation of a password used to provide password control access to MML | 0 to 12 <text character> | |
| CONTACT | Label identifying person/group responsible for the Signaling Server. | Maximum 24 characters | e.g admin@email.com |
| CRTYPE | The type of continuous record: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ALARM – alarms that have been reported to the alarm log | ALARM | |
| DATE | Calendar date, in the format: xxxx-yy-zz where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> xxxx – 4 digit year yy – 2 digit month zz – 2 digit day | xxxx – 1990 to 2037 yy – 01 to 12 zz – 01 to 31 | |
| DBITS | Number of data bits on V.24 port | 7 or 8 | Default = 8 |
| DEST | Signaling Gateway Destination Point ID | 1 to 512 | |
| DIRECTORY | Directory name on a remote data center. | 0 to 12 <text character> | |
| DISCARD | Whether data can be discarded | Y or N | Default = N |
| DOMAIN | Domain | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> IP MTP | |
| DOWN | SNMP object transition state. | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> All Create Change Destroy None | Traps will be generated if set to All, Create, Change or Destroy. Traps will not be generated if set to NONE. Default = Change |
| DPC | SS7 destination point code | 0 to 16777215 | |
| DTYPE | The type of saving/loading operation to be performed from a remote data center. See Section 5.2, "Remote Operations" on page 46 . | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> SOFTWARE CONFIG LICENSE | |
| DUPLEX | Specifies whether a connection is duplex (Y) or simplex (N). | Y or N | Default = N |
| END | Specifies whether the Signaling Gateway's end of the SIGTRAN link is acting as either a client (C) or a server (S). | C or S | |
| ENGINE | V3 SNMP Identifies the Engine part of the remote SNMP entity (manager). | Max 24 hexadecimal digits | |
| EQU | Signaling processor hardware identifier in the format: x-y where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> x = board position (BPOS) y = signaling link within the board. | x – 1 to 3 y – 1 to 64 | V.11 links can only use processors 1 and 2. HSL links can only use x-1 or x-33 |
| ETH | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ethernet port number | 1 to 6 | |

Table 3. Parameter Definitions (Continued)

| Name | Description | Range | Notes |
|----------|--|---|--|
| FF | PCM frame format: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> G704 – Normal E1 format described in G.704 CRC4 – Normal E1 format with CRC4 checksum generation CRC4C – Normal E1 format with CRC4 checksum generation. Compatible with non-CRC4 operation. SF – 12 frame multiframe (D3/D4) ESF – 24-frame multiframe CRC6 – ESF format with CRC6 checksum generation CRC4G706 – CRC4 G.706 compatible mode UNS - Unstructured High Speed Link NOTE: Out of CRC4-multiframe, E-Bits are transmitted as zeroes. | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> G704 CRC4 CRC4C SF ESF CRC6 CRC4G706 | Default = <ul style="list-style-type: none"> G704 for E1 SF for T1 UNS - can only be specified on SS7HDP signaling boards. |
| FILE | File name on a Remote Data Center (RDC) | 0 to 12 <text character> | |
| FTPPWD | FTP Password enabled parameter. Set to Y to enable ftp password protection, or N to disable password protection. | Y or N | Default = Y |
| FTPSE | Indicates whether the Signaling Gateway can act as a ftp server or not. Set to Y to enable the ftp server, or N to disable the ftp server. | Y or N | Default = Y |
| GATEWAY | An IP gateway used to reach other networks when the destination is not on the local sub-net. Specified using dot notation, that is, www.xxx.yyy.zzz | www – 0 to 255 xxx – 0 to 255 yyy – 0 to 255 zzz – 0 to 255 | Default = 0.0.0.0 |
| HPORT | Host SCTP port | 1 to 65535 | Default = <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2905 for M3UA SNLINKs. 3565 for M2PA SNLINKs. |
| HSL | High Speed Link mode | N – The SS7 link is not an HSL Link. Y – The SS7 link is an HSL link with 12 bit sequence numbers. SQ7 - SS7 link is an HSL link with 7 bit sequence numbers. | |
| IMPAIR | SNMP object transition state. | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> All Create Change Destroy None | Traps will be generated if set to All, Create, Change or Destroy. Traps will not be generated if set to NONE. Default = Change |
| INACTIVE | SNMP object transition state. | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> All Create Change Destroy None | Traps will be generated if set to All, Create, Change or Destroy. Traps will not be generated if set to NONE. Default = Change |
| INHIBIT | Invoke/revoke MTP3 management inhibiting of an SS7 signaling link | Y or N | Default = N |

Table 3. Parameter Definitions (Continued)

| Name | Description | Range | Notes |
|-----------|---|--|--|
| IPADDR | Internet Protocol (IP) address of the Signaling Gateway Ethernet port 1 specified using dot notation, that is, www.xxx.yyy.zzz | www – 0 to 255 xxx – 0 to 255 yyy – 0 to 255 zzz – 0 to 255 | Default = 0.0.0.0 |
| IPGW | Logical reference for an Internet Protocol Gateway | DEFAULT or value 1 to 31 | |
| IPNW | IP network identifier specified using dot notation, that is, www.xxx.yyy.zzz | www – 0 to 255 xxx – 0 to 255 yyy – 0 to 255 zzz – 0 to 255 | Default = 0.0.0.0 |
| IR | Logical reference for a incoming route | 1 to 32 | |
| ITS | The input timeslot in a cross connection (in the case of a duplex cross connection, this is also the output timeslot for the reverse direction). The format is: xx-y-zz where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> xx = board position (BPOS) y = PCM within a board zz = timeslot | xx – 1 to 3 y – 1 to 4 zz – 1 to 31 | |
| LABEL | Text label. | 0 to 12 <text character> | |
| LC | PCM line coding | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> HDB3 AMI B8ZS | Default = <ul style="list-style-type: none"> HDB3 for E1 B8ZS for T1 |
| LINES | Number of MML lines per page | 10 to 99 | Default = 25 |
| LOCATION | Label identifying the location of the unit. Max 24 characters. | | |
| LSH | Load share across link sets | Y to N | Default = N |
| LS | Logical reference of an SS7 link set, which can contain a number of signaling links | 1 to 64 | |
| LS1 | Primary link set associated with an SS7 route | 1 to 64 | |
| LS2 | Secondary linkset associated with an SS7 route | 1 to 64 | |
| LSSIZE | Maximum number of SS7 links allowed in the link set. The link set size is used to determine the load sharing algorithm used across the link set. | 1 to 16 | |
| M3UASHARE | The percentage of licensed throughput to be allocated to the M3UA protocol. Throughput capacity not allocated to M3UA will be allocated to M2PA. | Blank (no value) or 1 to 99 | After a change to the M3UASHARE parameter, the system should be restarted so that the change takes effect. |
| M56K | 56kbits signaling mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 - 64 kbits/s used 1 - 56kbits/s enabled (bit 8 not used) 2 - 48kbits/s enabled (bits 7 and 8 not used) 3 - Recover clock from V.11 interface 4 - Transmit clock to V.11 interface | 0 to 4 | Default = 0 M56K modes 3 and 4 can only be set on boards with SIGTYPE = SS7 For framed HSL, the valid M56K modes are 0(64k), 1(56k) and 2(48k). These values are used to identify the data rate, which is applied to all timeslots on the link. For unstructured HSL links, the M56K parameter must be set to 0. |

Table 3. Parameter Definitions (Continued)

| Name | Description | Range | Notes |
|----------|--|--|--|
| MASK | IP network mask specified using dot notation, that is, www.xxx.yyy.zzz | www – 0 to 255 xxx – 0 to 255 yyy – 0 to 255 zzz – 0 to 255 | |
| MINREC | The minimum number of records held by the Signaling Gateway before transfer | 100 to 200 | |
| MNGR | Logical identifier for an SNMP manager. | 1 to 32 | |
| NA | Network appearance | 0 to 2147483647 | |
| NASP | Number of ASP required in load sharing mode | 0 to 32 | Default = 0 |
| NC | Signaling Gateway SS7 network context | 1 to 4 | |
| NI | Network Indicator for an SS7 link set | 0 to 3 | |
| OBJECT | Identifier of a table within a Signaling Server Group Object. | | Refer to <i>Dialogic® DSI Signaling Servers SNMP User Manual</i> (U05EPP01) for MIB details. |
| OBJGRP | Identifier of the Signaling Server Group Object in the DSMI MIB. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 - Management Group 2 - System Group 3 - Platform Group 4 - IP Group 5 - Board Group 6 - SS7 Group 7 SIGTRAN Group 8 - Access Group. | Refer to <i>Dialogic® DSI Signaling Servers SNMP User Manual</i> (U05EPP01) for MIB details. |
| OPC | SS7 Originating Point Code | 0 to 16777215 | |
| OTS | The output timeslot in a cross connection (in the case of a duplex cross connection, this is also the input timeslot for the reverse direction). The format is: xx-y-zz where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> xx = board position (BPOS) y = PCM within a board zz = Timeslot | xx – 1 to 3 y – 1 to 4 zz – 1 to 31 | |
| PAGE | The page of data to be printed | 1 to 10 | Default = 1 |
| PARITY | Parity option on V.24 port. Affects transmit parity only, parity is ignored on receive. | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ODD EVEN NONE | Default = NONE |
| PASSWORD | Used to specify the password for either remote login access or to provide password control for Signaling Gateway MML | 0 to 12 <text character> | |
| PCM | PCM interface on a board in the format: xx-y where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> xx = board position (BPOS) y = PCM within a board | xx – 1 to 3 y – 1 to 4 | |
| PCMD | Application Server Point Code mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ANY – If any Application Server is in service then the Point Code the Application Server exists within is considered to be up. ALL – Only when all the Application Servers within a Point Code are in service will the Point Code they exist within be considered to be up. | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ANY ALL | |

Table 3. Parameter Definitions (Continued)

| Name | Description | Range | Notes |
|----------|--|--|---|
| PCMTYPE | The type of PCM in use | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> T1 E1 | |
| PCR | Preventive Cyclic Retransmission | Y or N | Default = N |
| PER | Personality configuration | 0 to 255 | Default = 0 |
| PERIOD | A period of time in the format: xx:yy:zz where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> xx = 2 digit hour yy = 2 digit minute zz = 2 digit second | xx – 00 to 23 yy – 00 to 59 (yy must be 00, when xx is 23) zz – 00 to 59 (zz must be 00, when xx is 23) | |
| PORT | V24 port identifier NOTE: Port 1 is not physically accessible. | 1 to 4 | |
| | SNMP destination port for SNMP traps. | | Default = 162 |
| PPOINT | The SCTP port associated with the peer on a SIGTRAN link | 1 to 65535 | Default = <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2905 for M3UA SNLINKs 3565 for M2PA SNLINKs |
| PRIV | SNMP V3 Privacy encryption protocol. | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> DES AES | |
| PRIVPASS | SNMP V3 User account Privacy password. Must be set if the PRIV parameter is used. | 8 to 12 | Must be set if the PRIV parameter is used. |
| PRTYPE | The type of periodic report: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MSC7 – periodic reporting of traffic measurements for CCS SS7 links. MSPCM – periodic reporting of traffic measurements for PCMs. MSSL – periodic reporting of traffic measurements for SIGTRAN links. MSEP – periodic reporting of Ethernet port measurements. MSSY – periodic reporting of System measurements. | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MSC7 MSSL MSPCM MSEP MSSY | |
| PTMODE | Mode for serial port | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> NONE DTRDSR TELNET | Default = <ul style="list-style-type: none"> DTRDSR for ports 1 and 2 TELNET for ports 3 and 4 |
| QUIESCE | SNMP object transition state. | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> All Create Change Destroy None | Traps will be generated if set to All, Create, Change or Destroy. Traps will not be generated if set to NONE. Default = Change |
| RANGE | CIC range | 0 to 4095 | |
| RAS | Logical reference for a SIGTRAN Remote Application Server | 1 to 200 | |
| RC | The routing context of a SIGTRAN link within an Application Server | 0 to 2147483647 | |
| RCOM | Read only Community String. The Signaling Server SNMP agent will silently discard received PDUs that have a community string not identical to this value. | A maximum 12 alphanumeric characters. | Default value = 'public' |
| RDC | Remote Data Center (RDC) identifier | 1 to 4 | |

Table 3. Parameter Definitions (Continued)

| Name | Description | Range | Notes |
|---------|--|--|---|
| RDC1 | First choice RDC for a continuous record or periodic report | 1 to 4 | |
| RDC2 | Second choice RDC for a continuous record or periodic report. Zero indicates no RDC is assigned. | 0 to 4 | Default = 0 |
| RECORD | The identifier for a continuous data collection record | 1 to 6 | |
| REPORT | The identifier for a periodic data collection report | 1 to 5 | |
| RESET | Performs a reset operation | Y or N | Default = N |
| RESTART | Specifies the type of restart operation, which can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> NORMAL - The system undergoes a full system restart, resetting the hardware, operating system and signaling software. This is the default behavior. NORMAL resets should be used for software upgrade or for maintenance events. SOFT - The system restarts the application software. Prior to a soft restart, the signaling boards are reset. SOFT resets may be used for a more rapid system restart after updating the system configuration or licenses. However, if a new software distribution is to be installed, the system performs a NORMAL restart. HALT - The system shuts down without a subsequent restart. Caution: Once the system has been halted, the only way to restart the unit is by physically pressing the Power switch on the front panel of the chassis. | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> NORMAL SOFT HALT | |
| | SNMP object transition state. | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> All Create Change Destroy None | Traps will be generated if set to All, Create, Change or Destroy. Traps will not be generated if set to NONE. Default = Change |
| RKI | Routing Key Index An identifier for either a complete routing key or part of a routing key. | 1 to 512 | |
| RKTAB | Routing Key Table A table of particular routing keys. | 1 to 8 | |
| RTPRI | Destination route priority | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> NONE MTP | Default = NONE |
| RTS | A timeslot within a PCM interface on a board used for monitoring information received by the monitored object. The format is: xx-y-zz where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> xx = board position (BPOS) y = PCM within a board zz = timeslot | xx – 1 to 3 y – 1 to 4 zz – 1 to 31 | |
| SBITS | Number of stop bits on V.24 port | 1 to 2 | Default = 1 |
| SECURE | Secure operation. When active offers a higher level of security. The use of the parameter is command specific. See the CNSYS and SNSLI command descriptions for more information. | Y or N | Default = N |

Table 3. Parameter Definitions (Continued)

| Name | Description | Range | Notes |
|---------|--|--|-------------------------|
| SEQ | Sequence number | 1 to 32 | |
| SG | Reserved | | |
| SI | Reserved | | |
| SIGTYPE | Type of software loaded onto signaling board | SS7 | |
| SLC | Signaling link code uniquely identifying a signaling link within a link set | 0 to 15 | |
| SNMP | Whether SNMP should be active on the system | | |
| | SNMP version running of the system | Set to DK4032, DSMTI or NONE | |
| SNRT | Reserved | | |
| SNTYPE | The type of operation of the SIGTRAN link | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> SGM3UA M2PA | |
| SNLINK | Logical reference for a SIGTRAN link | 1 to 256 | |
| SPEED | The speed of an Ethernet port. The values 10, 100, 100 select 10 MHz, 100 MHz and 1 GHz respectively. An "H" appended to the value indicates half-duplex operation; values without the appended "H" are full-duplex operation. | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> AUTO 10 100 1000 10H 100H | Default = AUTO |
| SRTX | Number of times a packet of SIGTRAN information can be retransmitted before determining that the SIGTRAN link has gone out of service | 2 to 10 | |
| SS7MD | SS7 signaling mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ITU14 – ITU operation with 14 bit Point Code ITU16 – ITU operation with 16 bit Point Code ITU24 – ITU operation with 24 bit Point Code ANSI – ANSI operation with 24 bit Point Code | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ITU14 ITU16 ITU24 ANSI | |
| STS | A timeslot within a PCM interface on a board used for monitoring information sent by the monitored object. The format is: xx-y-zz where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> xx = board position (BPOS) y = PCM within a board zz = timeslot | xx – 1 to 3 y – 1 to 4 zz – 1 to 31 | |
| SUBNET | Subnet mask for the network to which the Signaling Gateway is connected specified using dot notation, that is, www.xxx.yyy.zzz | www – 0 to 255 xxx – 0 to 255 yyy – 0 to 255 zzz – 0 to 255 | Default = 255.255.255.0 |
| SYNCPRI | The priority the PCM is given to provide clock synchronization: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 – Indicates never provide clock synchronization 1 – Highest priority that PCM should provide clock synchronization 32 – Lowest priority, that is, other PCMs have precedence | 0 to 32 | Default = 0 |
| SYSID | System identity | 0 to 12 <text character> | |
| SYSREF | The system reference number | 0 to 999 | Default = 0 |

Table 3. Parameter Definitions (Continued)

| Name | Description | Range | Notes |
|---------|---|--|---|
| SYSTYPE | The type of system to be run | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SGW • DSC • SIU | |
| TCOM | SNMP Trap Community String | Max 12 alphanumerical characters | |
| TFORMAT | Format of SNMP trap to be dispatched to the SNMP manager | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 - SNMP V1 • 2 - SNMP V2 • 3 - SNMP V2 INFORM | |
| TIME | Time of day in the format: xx:yy:zz where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • xx – 2 digit hour • yy – 2 digit minute • zz – 2 digit second | xx – 00 to 23 yy – 00 to 59 zz – 00 to 59 | |
| TLO | Auto log off time (in minutes) | 1 to 60 | Default = 30 |
| TLOW | Log off warning time (in minutes) | 0 to 60 | Default = 25 |
| TMSEC | Timer values in milliseconds associated with a timer number (resolution is 100ms) | 100 to 10000 (in integer multiples of 100) | |
| TO | Signaling system dependent timer number. As specified in the particular signaling system's list of timers. | 1 to 999 | |
| TS | A timeslot within a PCM interface on a board in the format: xx-y-zz where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • xx = board position (BPOS) • y = PCM within a board • zz = Timeslot | xx – 1 to 3 y – 1 to 4 zz – 1 to 31 | |
| TSEC | Timer values in seconds associated with a timer number | 1 to 3000 | |
| TTYPE | Timer Type See Section 5.3, "Signaling Gateway Timers" on page 46 for definitions of Signaling Gateway "CONV" specific timers. | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MTP3 • MTP3A • SCTP • CONV | |
| UP | SNMP object transition state. | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All • Create • Change • Destroy • None | Traps will be generated if set to All, Create, Change or Destroy. Traps will not be generated if set to NONE. Default = Change |

Table 3. Parameter Definitions (Continued)

| Name | Description | Range | Notes |
|---------|--|---|---|
| USER | User name | 0 to 12 <text character> | |
| | SNMP V3 Logical identifier for an SNMP user account. | 1 to 32 | |
| WARNING | SNMP object transition state. | One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All • Create • Change • Destroy • None | Traps will be generated if set to All, Create, Change or Destroy. Traps will not be generated if set to NONE. Default = Change |
| WCOM | Read/Write Community String. The Signaling Server SNMP agent will silently discard received PDUs that have a community string not identical to this value. | A maximum 12 alphanumeric characters. | Default value = 'private'. |

5.2 Remote Operations

Table 4 gives the possible remote operation types.

Table 4. Remote Operation Types

| DTYPE | Description |
|----------|---|
| SOFTWARE | Selecting this operation allows the user to upload a new software version. |
| CONFIG | Selecting this operation allows the user to upload a previously backed up version of the configuration. |
| LICENSE | Selecting this operation allows the user to upload new software licenses. |

5.3 Signaling Gateway Timers

5.3.1 Signaling Gateway-Specific Timers

Table 5 shows the Signaling Gateway specific timers. Timers for specific protocols are given in subsequent tables in this section.

Table 5. Signaling Gateway Specific Timers

| T0 | Range (seconds) | Default (seconds) | Description |
|----|-----------------|-------------------|--|
| 5 | 5 to 20 | 7 | Wait for board response guard timer. This timer starts when internal messages are sent to a signaling board and stopped when an acknowledgement is received. On timer expiry, it reports an error. If the internal message sent to a board related to setting up a speech path for a call, then the call is released using internal token 135. |
| 7 | 2 to 10 | 3 | MML wait for maintenance confirmation timer. The timer is started when a MML maintenance request is performed. It is stopped when a confirmation from the remote site to the maintenance request is received. On timer expiry, a confirmation to the request is internally generated allowing further MML commands to be entered. |

5.3.2 MTP3-Specific Timers

MTP3 ITU timers are given in [Table 6](#).

Table 6. MTP3 ITU Timers

| TO | Range (milliseconds) | Default (milliseconds) | Description |
|----|----------------------|------------------------|--|
| 1 | 500 to 1200 | 1000 | Delay to avoid message mis-sequencing on changeover |
| 2 | 700 to 2000 | 1500 | Waiting for changeover acknowledgement |
| 3 | 500 to 1200 | 1000 | Time controlled diversion-delay to avoid mis-sequencing on changeback |
| 4 | 500 to 1200 | 1000 | Waiting for changeback acknowledgement (first attempt) |
| 5 | 500 to 1200 | 1000 | Waiting for changeback acknowledgement (second attempt) |
| 6 | 500 to 1200 | 1000 | Delay to avoid message mis-sequencing on controlled rerouting |
| 10 | 30 to 60 sec. | 45 sec. | Waiting to repeat signaling route set test message |
| 12 | 800 to 1500 | 1200 | Waiting for uninhibit acknowledgement |
| 13 | 800 to 1500 | 1200 | Waiting for force uninhibit |
| 14 | 2000 to 3000 | 3000 | Waiting to start signaling route set congestion test |
| 17 | 800 to 1500 | 1000 | Delay to avoid oscillation of initial alignment failure and link restart |
| 22 | 180 to 360 sec. | 270 sec. | Local inhibit test timer |
| 23 | 180 to 360 sec. | 270 sec. | Remote inhibit test timer |
| 24 | N/A | N/A | Reserved |

MTP3 ANSI timers are given in [Table 7](#).

Table 7. MTP3 ANSI Timers

| TO | Range (milliseconds) | Default (milliseconds) | Description |
|----|----------------------|------------------------|---|
| 1 | 500 to 1200 | 1000 | Delay to avoid message mis-sequencing on changeover |
| 2 | 700 to 2000 | 1500 | Waiting for changeover acknowledgement |
| 3 | 500 to 1200 | 1000 | Time controlled diversion-delay to avoid mis-sequencing on changeback |
| 4 | 500 to 1200 | 1000 | Waiting for changeback acknowledgement (first attempt) |
| 5 | 500 to 1200 | 1000 | Waiting for changeback acknowledgement (second attempt) |
| 6 | 500 to 1200 | 1000 | Delay to avoid message mis-sequencing on controlled rerouting |
| 10 | 30 to 60secs | 45 sec. | Waiting to repeat signaling route set test message |
| 12 | 800 to 1500 | 1200 | Waiting for uninhibit acknowledgement |
| 13 | 800 to 1500 | 1200 | Waiting for force uninhibit |
| 14 | 2000 to 3000 | 3000 | Waiting to start signaling route set congestion test |
| 17 | 800 to 1500 | 1000 | Delay to avoid oscillation of initial alignment failure and link restart |
| 21 | N/A | N/A | Reserved |
| 22 | 180 to 360 sec. | 270 sec. | Local inhibit test timer NOTE: This timer is referred to as timer T20 in the ANSI specification. |
| 23 | 180 to 360 sec. | 270 sec. | Remote inhibit test timer NOTE: This timer is referred to as timer T21 in the ANSI specification. |
| 24 | N/A | N/A | Reserved |

5.3.3 SCTP-Specific Timers

SCTP-specific timers are given in Table 8.

Table 8. SCTP-Specific Timers

| TO | Range (milliseconds) | Default (milliseconds) | Description |
|----|-------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| 1 | 100 to 500 | 500 | Minimum retransmission timeout (RTO) |
| 2 | 100 to 60000 | 2000 | Maximum retransmission timeout (RTO) |
| 3 | T1 to T2 | 1000 | Retransmission timeout RTO initial value |
| 4 | 100 to 3000 | 1000 | SCTP Heartbeat timer |

5.4 Dialogic® DSI Network Interface Board Types

Table 9 shows the Dialogic® DSI Network Interface Board types.

Table 9. Dialogic® DSI Network Interface Board Types

| BRDTYPE | Description |
|-------------|--|
| SPCI2S-4-2 | Signaling Server network interface board with 4 signaling links configured and 2 PCMs. Used when configuring signaling boards with a SIGTYPE of SS7. |
| SPCI4-4-4 | Signaling Server network interface board with 4 signaling links configured and 4 PCMs. Used when configuring signaling boards with a SIGTYPE of SS7. |
| SS7HDP-64-4 | Signaling Server network interface board with 64 signaling links configured and 4 PCMs. Used when configuring signaling boards with a SIGTYPE SS7. |

Chapter 6: Command Definitions

6.1 Command Groups

The commands are broken down into a number of command groups as follows:

- Alarm Commands
- Configuration Commands
- SS7 Signaling Commands
- IP Commands
- MML Commands
- Maintenance Commands
- Measurement Commands
- Remote Data Center Commands
- Signaling Gateway Commands
- SIGTRAN Commands
- Status Commands

6.2 Command Notation

The following conventions are used in the command definitions:

- Items in square brackets [] are optional.
- Items separated by a vertical bar | are alternatives, only one of which can be used.
- Curly brackets { } are used to designate a group of optional items of which at least one must be selected.
- The sequence of three dots ... is used to indicate that a number of values can be entered, linked by the & or && operator.

6.3 Command Attributes

The following symbols are used to indicate command attributes:

- **CONFIG** - The command affects configuration data.
- **PROMPT** - A "DANGEROUS" command, which must be confirmed by the operator.

6.4 Alarm Commands

The alarm commands include:

- [ALCLS](#) - Alarm Class Set
- [ALCLP](#) - Alarm Class Print
- [ALFCP](#) - Alarm Fault Code Print
- [ALLIP](#) - Alarm List Print
- [ALLOP](#) - Alarm Log Print
- [ALREI](#) - Alarm Reset Initiate
- [ALTEI](#) - Alarm Test Initiate
- [ALTEE](#) - Alarm Test End

6.4.1 ALCLS – Alarm Class Set

Synopsis

This command assigns an alarm class value to a specified fault code(s).

The alarm class ([CLA](#)) is used to determine whether the alarm is classed as Minor, Major or Critical and in turn governs the alarm LED, relay and SNMP alarm that are activated when the condition exists.

Each alarm code ([CODE](#)) has a factory-set default class. See [Chapter 8, “Alarm Fault Code Listing”](#) for the factory default for each alarm code.

Syntax

```
ALCLS: CLA=, CODE=...;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
ALCLS: CLA=3, CODE=20;
```

6.4.2 ALCLP – Alarm Class Print

Synopsis

This command gives a printout of the fault codes belonging to a particular alarm class. If the [CLA](#) parameter is omitted, all fault codes are printed out.

Syntax

```
ALCLP[ : CLA=];
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
ALCLP:CLA=3;
ALCLP:CLA=4;
ALCLP:CLA=5;
ALCLP;
```

Output Format

```
Alarm Fault Codes
CODE  CLA  TITLE
11 4Processor1 fail
EXECUTED
```

6.4.3 ALFCP – Alarm Fault Code Print

Synopsis

This command gives a printout of the alarm class of the specified fault code(s).

The alarm class ([CLA](#)) is used to determine whether the alarm is classed as Minor, Major or Critical and in turn governs the alarm LED, relay and SNMP alarm that are activated when the condition exists.

Each alarm code ([CODE](#)) has a factory-set default class. See [Chapter 8, “Alarm Fault Code Listing”](#) for the factory default for each alarm code.

Syntax

```
ALFCP[:CODE=...];
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
ALFCP;
ALFCP:CODE=8;
```

Output Format

```
Alarm Fault Codes
CODE      CLA      TITLE
8          4      In-band AIS
EXECUTED
```

6.4.4 ALLIP – Alarm List Print

Synopsis

This command gives a printout of all ACTIVE fault codes stored in the system's alarm log.

Each fault code ([CODE](#)) is associated with an alarm class ([CLA](#)) which may be Minor, Major or Critical. The alarm class in turn governs which alarm LED, relay or SNMP alarm is activated when the condition exists.

The command provides an indication of the time that the alarm occurred (OCCURRED), the alarm class ([CLA](#)) indicating either a System, PCM or signaling failure) as well as an alarm code specific identifier (ID) and diagnostic field (DIAG).

See [Chapter 8, “Alarm Fault Code Listing”](#) for the definitions of the alarm code specific parameters.

Note: The meaning of the ID field depends on the alarm code and is described in [Chapter 8, “Alarm Fault Code Listing”](#).

Syntax

```
ALLIP;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
ALLIP;
```

Output Format

```
SYSTEMIDENT1 Alarm List (active alarms) 1996-12-01 00:00:54
ALP  CODE ID  DIAG CLA OCCURRED          CLEARED          TITLE
107      1 103      0 5 A 2001-10-30 10:54:48          PCM loss
 74      1 104      0 4 A 2001-10-30 10:54:27          PCM loss
EXECUTED
```

6.4.5 **ALLOP – Alarm Log Print**

Synopsis

This command gives a printout of the alarm log. If no code or class is entered, the whole log is output.

Each fault code ([CODE](#)) is associated with an alarm class ([CLA](#)) which may be Minor, Major or Critical. The alarm class in turn governs which alarm LED, relay or SNMP alarm that is activated when the condition exists.

The command provides an indication of the time the alarm occurred (OCCURRED) and, if it has done so, the time the alarm cleared (CLEARED). The output from the command indicates, the alarm class ([CLA](#) indicating either a System, PCM or signaling failure) as well as an alarm code specific identifier (ID) and a diagnostic field (DIAG). The C or A character in the [CLA](#) field indicates the current status as either A (active) or C (cleared).

See [Chapter 8, "Alarm Fault Code Listing"](#) for definitions of the alarm code specific parameters.

Syntax

```
ALLOP[:CODE=...];
ALLOP[:CLA=...];
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
ALLOP:CODE=20;
ALLOP:CLA=1&&2;
ALLOP;
```

Output Format

```
SYSTEMIDENT1 Alarm Log 1996-12-01 00:00:54
ALP  CODE ID  DIAG  CLA  OCCURRED          CLEARED          TITLE
107    1 103    0 5  A 2001-10-30 10:54:48 2001-10-30 10:54:53 PCM loss
74     1 104    0 4  A 2001-10-30 10:54:27 2001-10-30 10:59:53 PCM loss
EXECUTED
```

Note: The C or A character in the CLA field indicates the current status as A (active) or C (cleared). The meaning of the ID field depends on the alarm code and is described in [Chapter 8, "Alarm Fault Code Listing"](#).

6.4.6 ALREI – Alarm Reset Initiate

Synopsis

This command removes alarms that have cleared from the alarm log.

Attempts to remove commands that do not have the status CLEARED are rejected.

If parameter [ALP](#) is omitted, all alarms with status CLEARED are removed.

Syntax

```
ALREI[:ALP=];
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
ALREI:ALP=100;
ALREI;
```

6.4.7 ALTEI – Alarm Test Initiate

Synopsis

The command generates an active test alarm of the specified class, which is entered in the alarm log.

Alarm tests can be useful for validating the operation of hardware such as LEDS and alarm relays, as well as ensuring proper communication with an SNMP manager without impacting the operation of the system.

Syntax

```
ALTEI:{ [CLA=5] | [CLA=4] | [CLA=3] };
```

Prerequisites

- Only one test alarm can be active at any one time. Test alarms can only be generated for classes 3 (critical), 4 (major) and 5 (minor).

Attributes

None

Examples

```
ALTEI:CLA=3;
```

6.4.8 ALTEE – Alarm Test End

Synopsis

Clears a test alarm.

Syntax

```
ALTEE;
```

Prerequisites

- The alarm test must already have been initiated.

Attributes

None

Examples

```
ALTEE;
```

6.5 Configuration Commands

The configuration commands include:

- CNBOI - Configuration Board Initiate
- CNBOE - Configuration Board End
- CNBOP - Configuration Board Print
- CNBUI - Configuration Back Up Initiate
- CNMOI - Configuration Monitor Initiate
- CNMOE - Configuration Monitor End
- CNMOP - Configuration Monitor Print
- CNOBP - Display TRAP Configuration
- CNOBS - Set TRAP Configuration
- CNPCI - Configuration PCM Initiate
- CNPCC - Configuration PCM Change
- CNPCE - Configuration PCM End
- CNPCP - Configuration PCM Print
- CNRDI - Configuration Remote Data Center Initiate
- CNRDC - Configuration Remote Data Center Change
- CNRDE - Configuration Remote Data Center End
- CNRDP - Configuration Remote Data Center Print
- CNSMC - Change SNMP Manager Configuration
- CNSME - End SNMP Manager Configuration
- CNSMI - Set SNMP Manager Configuration
- CNSMP - Display SNMP Manager Configuration
- CNSNS - Configuration SNMP Set
- CNSNP - Configuration SNMP Print
- CNSWP - Configuration Software Print
- CNSYS - Configuration System Set
- CNSYP - Configuration System Print
- CNTDS - Configuration Time and Date Set
- CNTDP - Configuration Time And Date Print
- CNTOS - Configuration Timeout Value Set
- CNTOP - Configuration Timeout Value Print
- CNTPE - Configuration Network Time Protocol Server End
- CNTPI - Configuration Network Time Protocol Server Initiate
- CNTPP - Configuration Network Time Protocol Print
- CNTSP - Configuration Timeslot Print
- CNUPI - Configuration Update Initiate
- CNUSC - Change SNMP v3 User Configuration
- CNUSE - End SNMP v3
- CNUSI - Set SNMP v3
- CNUSP - Display SNMP v3
- CNXCI - Configuration Cross Connect Initiate
- CNXCE - Configuration Cross Connect End
- CNXCP - Configuration Cross Connect Print

6.5.1 CNBOI – Configuration Board Initiate

Synopsis

This command defines a new board on the system.

The user should specify the board position (**BPOS**) within the unit, the physical type of the board (**BRDTYPE**) and the signaling type (**SIGTYPE**), which identifies the software that will run on the board.

See [Section 7.1.2, “Boards and PCMs” on page 136](#) for a more detailed description of board configuration.

Syntax

```
CNBOI: BPOS=, BRDTYPE=, SIGTYPE=;
```

Prerequisites

- No board has already been defined for the specified board position.
- A board must physically exist for the board position and be licensed for the Signaling Gateway.
- If you are using a Dialogic® DSI SS7HDP Network Interface Board, it must have a signaling type of SS7.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNBOI: BPOS=1, BRDTYPE=SPCI4-4-4, SIGTYPE=SS7;  
CNBOI: BPOS=1, BRDTYPE=SPCI2S-4-2, SIGTYPE=SS7;  
CNBOI: BPOS=3, BRDTYPE=SS7HDP-64-4, SIGTYPE=SS7;
```

6.5.2 CNBOE – Configuration Board End

Synopsis

This command deassigns a board from a board position.

Syntax

```
CNBOE: BPOS=;
```

Prerequisites

- A board has been defined for the specified board position.
- No signaling processor on the board has been allocated to a signaling link.
- No **PCM** on the board is configured.
- The board has been blocked.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNBOE: BPOS=3;
```


6.5.3 CNBOP – Configuration Board Print

Synopsis

This command gives a print out of all configured boards.

Syntax

CNBOP;

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

CNBOP;

Output Format

```
Board Configuration
BPOS  BRDTYPE      SIGTYPE
1      SPCI2S-4-2   SS7
3      SPCI2S-4-2   SS7
EXECUTED
```

6.5.4 CNBUI – Configuration Back Up Initiate

Synopsis

This command backs up either the configuration data or the current software distribution to a Remote Data Center (RDC).

A filename ([FILE](#)) should be entered on the command line without a suffix. The command automatically reads the filename with a suffix. The command determines the suffix from the [DTYPE](#) parameter. For example, if the user specifies FILE=CFG and DTYPE=CONFIG, the full filename would be CFG.CF4.

The file suffix and default filename for each DTYPE is as follows:

- For DTYPE=CONFIG, the filename suffix is .CF3. If a filename is not specified, the default is "SDC".
- For DTYPE=SOFTWARE, the filename suffix is .tgz. If a filename is not specified, the default is "sgw".

Optionally, the file may be backed up to a subdirectory ([DIRECTORY](#)) of the account on the RDC.

Note: During execution of this command, the system may not respond for up to three minutes while the command is being executed.

Syntax

CNBUI:RDC=,DTYPE=, [FILE=,] [DIRECTORY=,];

Prerequisites

- The [RDC](#) should be initiated and not blocked.
- The [DTYPE](#) can only be CONFIG or SOFTWARE.
- If the [RDC](#) is the "local" RDC, a [FILE](#) name of SDC or SGW is not allowed.

Attributes

None

Examples

CNBUI:RDC=1,DTYPE=CONFIG,FILE=SDC;

6.5.5 CNMOI – Configuration Monitor Initiate

Synopsis

This command initiates the monitoring of an object on the Signaling Gateway. An object is currently a [C7LINK](#).

For signaling, the [STS](#) monitors information sent from the [EQU](#) of the signaling link and the [RTS](#) monitors information received by the signaling link.

Syntax

```
CNMOI:C7LINK=, STS=, RTS=;
```

Prerequisites

- If specified, the [C7LINK](#) has already been initiated and must have a [TS](#) and [EQU](#).
- The [PCM](#) on which [STS](#) exists must have already been initiated and STS must be within the correct range for the PCM type (0 to 31 for E1 and 1 to 24 for T1 PCMs).
- The [PCM](#) on which [RTS](#) exists must have already been initiated and RTS must be within the correct range for the PCM type (0 to 31 for E1 and 1 to 24 for T1 PCMs).
- [STS](#) is not already assigned elsewhere on the system for output.
- [RTS](#) is not already assigned elsewhere on the system for output.
- A signaling link can only be monitored once.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNMOI:C7LINK=1, STS=3-3-15, RTS=5-3-16;
```

6.5.6 CNMOE – Configuration Monitor End

Synopsis

This command ends the monitoring of an object. An object is currently only an signaling link.

Syntax

```
CNMOE:C7LINK=;
```

Prerequisites

- The [C7LINK](#) is being monitored.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNMOE:C7LINK=1;
```

6.5.7 CNMOP – Configuration Monitor Print

Synopsis

This command is used to obtain a print out of the objects being monitored. An object is currently only a signaling link.

For signaling, the [STS](#) monitors information sent from the [EQU](#) of the signaling link and the [RTS](#) monitors information received by the signaling link.

Syntax

```
CNMOP;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
CNMOP;
```

Output Format

```
Monitoring Configuration
C7LINK STS   RTS
1      3-3-1 3-3-2
3      3-3-3 3-3-4
EXECUTED
+++
```

6.5.8 CNOBP – Display TRAP Configuration

Synopsis

This command displays the current TRAP configuration. The entire TRAP configuration for all available objects will be displayed if no object group is specified. The list of available objects will depend on the current system mode configuration (i.e. SIU, DSC or SG). If the objgrp parameter is specified, CNOBP will display settings for only that object group. The [CNOBS](#) command allows the TRAP configuration to be changed.

Syntax

```
CNOBP[:OBJGRP=];
```

Prerequisites

The DDMI-based SNMP agent must be enabled.

Attributes

None.

Examples

```
CNOBP;
CNOBP:OBJGRP=3;
```

Output Format

```

Configuration SNMP Traps
OBJGRP OBJECT  UP      DOWN      INACTIVE  IMPAIR    RESTART   QUIESCE   WARNING
1        1      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
1        2      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
1        3      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
2        1      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
2        2      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
2        3      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
2        4      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
3        1      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
3        2      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
3        3      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
3        4      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
3        5      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
4        1      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
5        1      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
5        2      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
6        1      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
6        2      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
6        3      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
7        1      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
7        2      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
7        3      CHANGE  CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE    CHANGE
EXECUTED

```

6.5.9 CNOBS – Set TRAP Configuration

Synopsis

This command allows a user to determine the conditions under which an SNMP TRAP will be generated for a particular DSMI object.

Essentially, a TRAP can be generated:

- "When any row within an object changes state (CHANGE)
- "When a new row (with a particular state) is created within an object (CREATE)
- "When a row (with a particular state) is destroyed within an object (DESTROY)
- "When any combination of the above occur (ALL), or when an event occurs that affects the alarm condition of the object, but does not necessarily change the state.

TRAPs can also be completely disabled (NONE).

Possible states that a DSMI object can transition into are:

| | |
|----------|---|
| UP | Operational and available |
| DOWN | Not available |
| INACTIVE | Operational but not available |
| IMPAIR | Operational and available but encountering service-affecting condition (e.g. congestion). |
| RESTART | Unavailable but will soon be available |
| QUIESCE | Operational but in the process of shutting down/being removed |
| WARNING | Operational and available but encountering a non service-affecting condition |

Only one state's TRAP configuration can be configured per single invocation of this command.

The **CNOBP** command displays the current TRAP configuration for each object.

These TRAP messages are sent to SNMP managers, which are defined with the **CNSMI** command. The default setting for all object states is **CHANGE**.

Syntax

```
CNOBS:OBJGRP=, OBJECT=[, UP=] | [, DOWN=] | [, INACTIVE=] | [, IMPAIR=] | [, RESTART=] | [, QUIESCE=, ] | [, WARNING=];
```

Prerequisites

The DSMTI-based SNMP agent must be enabled.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNOBS:OBJGRP=7,OBJECT=2,DOWN=all;
```

This will cause a TRAP to be generated whenever an SS7 link is created in the Down state, or destroyed while in the Down state or when the link enters the Down state.

6.5.10 CNPCI – Configuration PCM Initiate**Synopsis**

This command configures a PCM ([PCM](#)) for T1 or E1 operation ([PCMTYPE](#)) on a board such that it is available for signaling or voice. The command optionally configures the PCM to be used as a potential synchronization source for the system ([SYNCPRI](#)). The command also allows the frame format (FF) and line code (LC) to be configured. See [Section 7.1.2, “Boards and PCMs” on page 136](#) for a more detailed description of PCM configuration.

Syntax

```
CNPCI:PCM=, PCMTYPE=, [SYNCPRI=, ] [FF=, ] [LC=, ] [IDLE=] [BM=] [BUILDOUT=, ] [UNS=, ];
```

Prerequisites

- The board on which the [PCM](#) exists has been initiated.
- The [PCM](#) has not already been initiated.
- For a [PCMTYPE](#) of E1, the [LC](#) can be set to HDB3 and the [FF](#) can be set to G704, CRC4, CRC4C or CRC4G706.
- For a [PCMTYPE](#) of T1, the [LC](#) can be set to AMI or B8ZS and the [FF](#) can be set to SF, ESF or CRC6.
- An [FF](#) of CRC4G706 can only be set on a board type of SS7HDP.
- The [BUILDOUT](#) parameter can only have a value of 0 for E1 and a value of 1 for T1s on boards of a type other than SS7HDP.
- A frame format of [UNS](#) can only be specified for PCMs on SS7HDP signaling boards.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNPCI:PCM=1-1, PCMTYPE=E1, SYNCPRI=1;
```

6.5.11 CNPCC – Configuration PCM Change

Synopsis

This command allows changes to the configuration of a [PCM](#).

Syntax

```
CNPCC:PCM=, { [PCMTYPE=, ] | [SYNCPRI=, ] [FF=, ] [LC=, ] [IDLE=] [BM=] [BUILDOUT=, ] } ;
```

Prerequisites

- The [PCM](#) has already been initiated.
- For a [PCMTYPE](#) of E1, the [LC](#) can be set to HDB3 and the [FF](#) can be set to G704, CRC4, CRC4C or CRC4G706.
- For a [PCMTYPE](#) of T1, the [LC](#) can be set to AMI or B8ZS and the [FF](#) can be set to SF, ESF or CRC6.
- An [FF](#) of CRC4G706 can only be set on a Dialogic® DSI SS7HDP Network Interface Board.
- The frame format ([FF](#)) value cannot be changed to or from [UNS](#) using this command - use [CNPCI](#).
- The [BUILDOUT](#) parameter can only have a value of 0 for E1 and a value of 1 for T1s on boards of a type other than SS7HDP.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNPCC:PCM=1-1,SYNCPRI=3;
```

6.5.12 CNPCE – Configuration PCM End

Synopsis

This command ends the configuration of a [PCM](#) such that it is unavailable for voice or signaling.

Syntax

```
CNPCE:PCM=;
```

Prerequisites

- No timeslot on the [PCM](#) has been assigned to voice, signaling monitoring or cross connections.
- The board on which the [PCM](#) exists has been blocked.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNPCE:PCM=1-1;
```

6.5.13 CNPCP – Configuration PCM Print

Synopsis

This command gives a printout of all the configured PCMs.

Syntax

```
CNPCP;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

CNPCP;

Output Format

| PCM | PCMTYPE | LC | FF | SYNCPRI | IDLE | BUILDOUT |
|-----|---------|------|------|---------|------|----------|
| 1-2 | E1 | HDB3 | G704 | 6 | 2A | 0 |
| 2-2 | E1 | HDB3 | G704 | 1 | 2A | 0 |
| 3-1 | T1 | B8ZS | SF | 2 | 2A | 7 |

EXECUTED

6.5.14 CNRDI – Configuration Remote Data Center Initiate**Synopsis**

This command is used to configure Remote Data Center ([RDC](#)) so that data from periodic report or continuous recording can be transferred to that location. The connection itself is established when the RDC is unblocked.

An RDC is an account, with an FTP logon name ([USER](#)) and password ([PASSWORD](#)) on a remote system ([IPADDR](#)) operating as an FTP server. No proprietary software is required to run on the remote system.

Note: If an RDC has previously been ended, but a file transfer was already in progress, subsequent CNRDIs using that RDC fail with “NO SYSTEM RESOURCES” until the file transfer has completed.

To configure the Signaling Gateway to act itself as an RDC, the user must specify a local address (127.0.0.1) together with the “siuftp” account name and password.

Note: Local operation functions only if the ftp server on the system is active.

Syntax

```
CNRDI:RDC=, IPADDR=, USER=, PASSWORD=, [LABEL=, ];
```

Prerequisites

- The [RDC](#) is not already initiated.
- The IP address is not already in use.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNRDI:RDC=1, IPADDR=255.123.0.124, USER=JOHN, PASSWORD=BAZZA123;
```

6.5.15 CNRDC – Configuration Remote Data Center Change**Synopsis**

This command is used to change the configuration of a Remote Data Center (RDC).

Syntax

```
CNRDC:RDC=, { [IPADDR=, ] [USER=, ] [PASSWORD=, ] [LABEL=, ] };
```

Prerequisites

- The [RDC](#) is already initiated and blocked.
- If specified, the IP address is not already in use.
- Remote data operation must be allowed by the system.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNRDC:RDC=1,IPADDR=194.192.184.77,USER=JOHN,PASSWORD=BAZZA23;
```

6.5.16 CNRDE – Configuration Remote Data Center End**Synopsis**

This command is used to end a Remote Data Center (RDC).

Syntax

```
CNRDE:RDC=;
```

Prerequisites

- The RDC is already initiated.
- The RDC is blocked.
- The RDC is not attached to a continuous record or periodic report.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNRDE:RDC=1;
```

6.5.17 CNRDP – Configuration Remote Data Center Print**Synopsis**

This command is used to print out the Remote Data Center parameters.

The password is not printed.

Syntax

```
CNRDP;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
CNRDP;
```

Output Format

```
Remote Data Centre Configuration
RDC  IPADDR      USER      PASSWORD    LABEL
1    194.192.184.33  JOHN      *****    PRIMARY
2    127.0.0.1      siuftp    *****    Local
EXECUTED
```


6.5.18 CNSMC – Change SNMP Manager Configuration

Synopsis

This command allows the administrator to alter an SNMP manager's configuration. The parameters and the associated values are as per the [CNSMI](#) command.

Syntax

```
CNSMC:MNGR={ , IPADDR= | , TFORMAT= | , PORT= | , TCOM= | , USER= | , ENGINE= | , LABEL= } ;
```

Prerequisites

The DSMI-based SNMP agent must be enabled.

The manager must already have been defined with the CNSMI command.

If an SNMP v3 user is specified, the user must already be defined.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNSMC:MNGR=1 , IPADDR=192.168.220.222 ;
```

6.5.19 CNSME – End SNMP Manager Configuration

Synopsis

This command removes an SNMP manager definition from the list of configured SNMP managers. The command takes a single parameter, MNGR, which identifies the particular manager to remove.

Syntax

```
CNSME:MNGR= ;
```

Prerequisites

The DSMI-based SNMP agent must be enabled.

The manager must already have been defined with the CNSMI command.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNSME:MNGR=1 ;
```

6.5.20 CNSMI – Set SNMP Manager Configuration

Synopsis

This command allows the administrator to define up to 32 TRAP destinations (i.e. remote SNMP manager stations). Each manager is defined by its IP address (IPADDR). Additionally, the type of TRAP to be dispatched to the SNMP manager is specified with the TFORMAT parameter. The following values are supported:

| | |
|---|---------------------------|
| 1 | An SNMP v1 TRAP is sent |
| 2 | An SNMP v2 TRAP is sent |
| 3 | An SNMP v2 INFORM is sent |

The `PORT` parameter allows the user to configure a destination port which is different to the default standard SNMP TRAP port (162).

If the remote SNMP (v1 or v2c) manager has been configured to only recognize TRAPs received with a community string, the `TCOM` parameter accommodates that value.

If an SNMP v3 TRAP is to be issued, then the `USER` parameter value is used. The `USER` parameter is used to specify a user, which has been defined with the `CNUSI` command. Furthermore, it will also be necessary to configure an engine identifier, which has been configured on the remote SNMP manager. The engine identifier is configured with the `ENGINE` parameter.

Finally, the `LABEL` parameter is used to specify an optional string identifier for the manager.

Syntax

```
CNSMI:MNGR=,IPADDR=,TFORMAT=[,PORT=][,TCOM=][,USER=][,ENGINE=][,LABEL=];
```

Prerequisites

The DSMI-based SNMP agent must be enabled. If an SNMP v3 TRAP is required, the user referenced by the `USER` parameter must exist.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

This is an example for setting up a simple SNMP v2 TRAP receiver/manager:

```
CNSMI:MNGR=1,IPADDR=192.168.1.22,TFORMAT=2;
```

This next example shows how an SNMP v3 TRAP receiver/manager would be created. The first step is to define the user with the `CNUSI` command:

```
CNUSI:USER=1,AUTH=MD5,AUTHPASS=abcdefgh,LABEL=user1;  
EXECUTED
```

The next step is to define the manager which references the user which has just been defined:

```
CNSMI:MNGR=2,IPADDR=192.168.1.222,USER=1,ENGINE=1122334455;  
EXECUTED
```

6.5.21 CNSMP – Display SNMP Manager Configuration

Synopsis

This command displays the currently configured SNMP managers. If a `MNGR` value is specified, only that manager is displayed.

Syntax

```
CNSMP [:MNGR=];
```

Prerequisites

The DSMI-based SNMP agent must be enabled.

Attributes

None.

Examples

```
CNSMP;
```

Output Format

```
Configuration SNMP Manager
MNGR IPADDR PORT TFORMAT TCOM USER ENGINEID LABEL
1 192.168.220.192 162 1 0
EXECUTED
```

6.5.22 CNSNS – Configuration SNMP Set

Synopsis

This command is used to select an SNMP agent or to disable SNMP. Changing the SNMP parameter with the CNSNS command will require a system restart for the changes to take effect. The SNMP parameter value can be one of three values. Setting the SNMP value to DK4032 will activate the legacy SNMP support. Setting the SNMP value to DSMI will activate the enhanced, DSMI-based agent if there is a valid license on the server. Finally, SNMP can be disabled altogether by specifying a value of NONE.

Note: When the DSMI-based SNMP agent is enabled initially, the RCOM string is assigned a value of 'public' and the WCOM string a value of 'private'. Unlike the legacy SNMP agent (SNMP=DK4032), there is no support for SNMP requests without a community string.

Syntax

```
CNSNS:SNMP=, [RCOM=, CONFIRM=], [WCOM=, CONFIRM=];
```

Prerequisites

Before DSMI SNMP functionality can be activated, the unit must be equipped with a license supporting DSMI SNMP functionality.

Example

```
CNSNS:SNMP=DSMI,RCOM=rcomstring,CONFIRM=rcomstring;
```

6.5.23 CNSNP – Configuration SNMP Print

Synopsis

This command displays the current SNMP mode, including the read and, where applicable, the write community string. The current SNMP agent, however, does not support write access. The output of this command can be used to determine which, if any, SNMP agent is currently activated on the Server. In the case of the enhanced DSMI-based agent, the SNMP setting will be DSMI. In the case of the legacy SNMP support, the value is DK4032. Additionally, if SNMP is not currently activated, a value of NONE will be displayed.

Syntax

```
CNSNP;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Example

```
CNSNP;
```

Output Format

```
SNMP Configuration
SNMP DSMI
RCOM *****
WCOM *****
EXECUTED
```

6.5.24 CNSWP – Configuration Software Print

Synopsis

This command is used print out the version numbers of the software operating on the main CPU and signaling boards within a Signaling Gateway. The command also displays the library version numbers for each protocol configured on the unit.

Syntax

```
CNSWP;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Output Format

```
Software Configuration
SS7G20      V3.02

Board Codefiles
SYS  SPCI  V1.16

Protocol Libraries
MTP3  CPU   V5.01
MTP2  SPCI  V5.03
EXECUTED
```

6.5.25 CNSYS – Configuration System Set

Synopsis

This command is used to enter the system identity string, personality setting, system reference number, and to turn on and off certain features and signaling systems on the Signaling Gateway.

The user can specify whether they wish to allow ftp access to the Signaling Gateway by using the [FTPSE](#) parameter. The Signaling Gateway can act as an ftp server to allow update of configuration, software and purchasable licenses. For security, it is recommended that ftp server access is switched off when the user does not need to execute these functions. The user can disable [FTPSE](#) by setting the parameter to N. Activation or deactivation of the ftp server takes immediate effect.

The user can specify whether they wish to restrict access to the Signaling Gateway so that it operates only over secure shell (SSH) by using the [SECURE](#) parameter. By default, there is no restriction allowing the use normal telnet and ftp access. The user can enable SECURE operation by setting the parameter to Y. Activation or deactivation of SECURE operation takes immediate effect.

When a password is specified, all new MML sessions apart from serial port 2 (COM2) require a password before entry.

The personality parameter is used to select customer-specific, non-standard operating functionality for the Signaling Gateway. To achieve the standard operating functionality, the personality should be set to the default value (that is, zero). Unless otherwise notified, all customers should select the standard operating functionality.

The M3UASHARE parameter determines the percentage of the licensed throughput capacity allocated to the M3UA protocol - the remainder being allocated to M2PA.

For example, on a system equipped with the **SS7SBG30SGWJ** software license which allows up to 2460 Kilobytes/sec throughput, if the M3UASHARE parameter is set to a value of 25, then M3UA is allocated 615 (25%) Kilobytes/sec, and M2PA is allocated the remaining capacity. If M3UASHARE is blank then the total licensed capacity can be used by either M3UA or M2PA - but not both.

When M3UASHARE is blank only M3UA links or only M2PA links can be unblocked, but not both types. Before M3UASHARE can be set to 'blank' (i.e a value is removed), all SIGTRAN links must be blocked.

Following changes to the M3UASHARE parameter, the system RESTART REQUIRED alarm is invoked and the system should be restarted before the changes can take effect.

See [Section 7.1.1, “System Configuration” on page 135](#) for a more detailed description of system configuration.

Syntax

```
CNSYS: { [SYSID=, ] | [SYSREF=, ] | [PER=, ] | [SECURE=, ] | [FTPSE=, ] | [FTPPWD=, ] |
[ GATEWAY=, ] | [CONTACT=, ] | [LOCATION=, ] | [M3UASHARE=, ] }
CNSYS: PASSWORD=, CONFIRM=,
```

Prerequisites

- When changing the personality or activating/deactivating signaling protocols, all boards and groups within the system must be blocked.
- A password, if provided, must be confirmed using the [CONFIRM](#) parameter to ensure that the password has not been mistyped.
- The user cannot enter a [PER](#) parameter value that already exists in the system.
- Before M3UASHARE can be unset, i.e., **M3UASHARE=**; all SIGTRAN links must be blocked.
- After changes to the M3UASHARE parameter, the system must be reset before changes will become effective.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNSYS: SYSID=STATION1, PER=2;
```

```
CNSYS: M3UASHARE=60;
```

```
CNSYS: M3UASHARE=;
```

6.5.26 CNSYP – Configuration System Print

Synopsis

Software options not licensed on the unit do not appear in the list. Most of these configuration items are set using the [CNSYS](#) command, which also contains more details of other options. The “Password” value shows “*****” if a password is set and blank if a password is not set.

Syntax

```
CNSYP;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
CNSYP;
```

Output Format

```
System Configuration
UNITID:      001e0dc74896
SYSID:       LDXCentre
SYSREF:      0
LOCATION:      Room5
CONTACT:     admint@email.com
PASSWORD:
FTPPWD:      N
FTPSE:       Y
SECURE:      N
PER:         0
M3UASHARE
EXECUTED
```

Note: The protocol and mode parameters are only present if licensed. When a protocol or mode is active, the parameter shows the value “Y”, and when inactive, the parameter shows the value “N”.

6.5.27 CNTDS – Configuration Time and Date Set

Synopsis

This command is used to specify the date (DATE) and time (TIME) as used by the system. This command can also activate or deactivate Network Time Protocol (NTP) on the system. System time is used by the Signaling Server to indicate the time an alarm occurred or cleared and to provide timestamps for such things as measurements and data records. The command also allows an OFFSET from UTC to be specified to allow the system to report the correct local time, when synchronized with an NTP time server.

Note: The system will not automatically adjust for daylight savings time changes.

See:

- The [CNTDP](#) command to verify the time and date settings.
- The [CNTPI](#) command to add NTP servers to the configuration.

Syntax

```
CNTDS: [DATE=, ] [TIME=, ] [NTP=, ] [OFFSET=];
```

Prerequisites

- The **OFFSET** value must be specified in hours and optionally 0 or 30 minutes, in the range -14 to +12. e.g.

| | |
|-------------------------------|--------|
| Montreal, CANADA | -5:00 |
| Parsippany, USA | -5:00 |
| Fordingbridge, UNITED KINGDOM | 0:00 |
| Renningen, GERMANY | +1:00 |
| New Delhi, INDIA | +5:30 |
| Beijing, CHINA | +8:00 |
| Sydney, AUSTRALIA | +10:00 |

The unit must be restarted in order for the new **OFFSET** value to take effect.

- The date cannot be changed if periodic reports or continuous records are configured.

Attributes

CONFIG - The command affects configuration data.

Example

```
CNTDS:DATE=2001-10-03,TIME=18:32:21,NTP=Y,OFFSET=+5:30;
EXECUTED
```

6.5.28 CNTDP – Configuration Time And Date Print**Synopsis**

This command is used to print out the system date and time, whether NTP is active and to display the OFFSET from UTC configured. See the [CNTDS](#) command for setting the time and date, UTC OFFSET and activating NTP.

Syntax

```
CNTDP;
```

Prerequisites

None.

Attributes

None.

Example

```
CNTDP;
Configuration Time and Date
DATE      TIME      NTP  OFFSET
2001-10-03 09:04:02 Y    +5:30
```

6.5.29 CNTOS – Configuration Timeout Value Set**Synopsis**

This command is used to change the value of a timer for a particular signaling system.

The user should specify the timer type ([TTYPE](#)), the timer itself ([TO](#)) and time to which it should be set, expressed in either seconds ([TSEC](#)) or milliseconds ([TMSEC](#)).

Note: Some signaling system timer values are not changeable.

See the [CNTOP](#) command to verify timer values. See [Section 5.3, “Signaling Gateway Timers” on page 46](#) for the definition of signaling system specific timers.

Syntax

```
CNTOS:TTYPE=,TO=,{TSEC=|TMSEC=};
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNTOS:TTYPE=MTP3,TO=7,TSEC=30;
```

6.5.30 CNTOP – Configuration Timeout Value Print

Synopsis

This command is used to print the value of either a single timer or all the timers for a particular protocol module. (Refer to CNTOS command to set timer values.)

Syntax

```
CNTOP:TTYPE=, [TO=, ] ;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
CNTOP:TTYPE=MTP3 ;
```

Output Format

```
Timeout Values:
TTYPE  TO      TSEC    TMSEC
MTP3   1        60
MTP3   2       360
MTP3   3       120
MTP3   4       360
MTP3   5         5
MTP3   6         5
MTP3   7         3
MTP3  10        60
EXECUTED
```

6.5.31 CNTPE – Configuration Network Time Protocol Server End

Synopsis

This command is used to remove an NTP Server from the configuration of the system.

Syntax

```
CNTPE:NTPSER;
```

Prerequisites

The specified NTPSER must already be configured.

Attributes

CONFIG - The command affects configuration data.

Example

```
CNTPE:NTPSER=1 ;
```

6.5.32 CNTPI – Configuration Network Time Protocol Server Initiate

Synopsis

This command is used to add an NTP server to the configuration of the system. The NTP service should be activated using the CNTDS command.

Syntax

```
CNTPI:NTPSER=, IPADDR=, [LABEL=] ;
```


Prerequisites

The specified NTPSER must not already be configured.

The IPADDR may not be used more than once and may not identify any of the configured system IP addresses.

Up to 16 NTP servers may be configured.

Attributes

CONFIG - The command affects configuration data.

Example

```
CNTPI:NTPSER=1,IPADDR=192.168.0.1,LABEL=NTPSERV1;
```

6.5.33 CNTPP – Configuration Network Time Protocol Print**Synopsis**

This command is used to display the configuration of the Network Time Protocol software on the unit.

Syntax

```
CNTPP;
```

Prerequisites

None.

Attributes

None.

Example

```
CNTPP;
Configuration of NTP Servers
NTPSER IPADDR      LABEL
1      192.168.0.1  NTP server 1
2      192.168.0.2  NTP server 2
EXECUTED
```

6.5.34 CNTSP – Configuration Timeslot Print**Synopsis**

This command is used to print the configuration of all timeslots on a [PCM](#).

A timeslot on a [PCM](#) can be allocated to signaling, voice, cross connect, or monitoring or it can be unallocated. Data is printed for a timeslot when it is acting as an outgoing timeslot.

A timeslot can act as an outgoing timeslot for the following types:

- SIG - Carries signaling information. It forms a duplex connection.
- OTS - Acts as an outgoing timeslot for a cross connection. It may form a duplex connection.
- STS - The outgoing timeslot monitoring the send direction of an object.
- RTS - The outgoing timeslot monitoring the receive direction of an object.

Note: An object is currently only a signaling link.

For signaling, the [STS](#) monitors information sent from the [EQU](#) of the signaling link and the [RTS](#) monitors information received by the signaling link.

Syntax

```
CNTSP:PCM=;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None.

Examples

```
CNTSP:PCM=3-3;
```

Output Format

```
PCM Timeslot Configuration
TS      TYPE C7LINK ITS
3-3-22  SIG   6
3-3-24  OTS           4-4-4
3-3-25  RTS   7
3-3-25  STS   8
EXECUTED
```

6.5.35 CNUPI – Configuration Update Initiate

Synopsis

This command is used to update configuration data, software or a license on the Signaling Gateway. The operation involves reading files containing either configuration data, software or a license from a Remote Data Center (if specified) or portable media (CD or USB) and loading it into memory. Optionally, the file may be read from a subdirectory (**DIRECTORY**) of the account on the RDC.

A **FILE** name should be entered on the command line without a suffix. The command automatically reads the file name with a suffix. The command determines the suffix by use of the **DTYPE** parameter. For example, the file CFG.CF3 for a **DTYPE** of CONFIG would be entered as CFG.

The filename suffix for **DTYPE**=CONFIG is .CF3.

The filename suffix for **DTYPE**=SOFTWARE is .tgz.

The filename suffix for **DTYPE**=LICENSE is .lic.

If not specified, the default filename for a **DTYPE**=CONFIG is "SDC".

If not specified, the default filename for a **DTYPE**=SOFTWARE is "sgw".

If not specified, the default filename for a **DTYPE**=LICENSE is "sgw".

Note: During execution of this command, there system may not respond for up to 3 minutes while the command is being executed.

Syntax

```
CNUPI:DTYPE=,RDC=,[DIRECTORY=,][FILE=,];
```

Prerequisites

- If the **RDC** is specified, it should be initiated and not blocked.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNUPI:RDC=1,DTYPE=CONFIG,DIRECTORY=AUTH,FILE=CFG;
```

6.5.36 CNUSC – Change SNMP v3 User Configuration

Synopsis

This command allows the configuration of a previously registered SNMP v3 user to be changed. The USER parameter identifies the user account to modify.

The parameters and associated values are as per the CNUSI command, with the additional parameters PRIV and PRIVPASS. Supported PRIV parameter values are DES and AES. As with the AUTHPASS parameter value, the privacy password value (PRIVPASS) must be between 8 and 24 characters long. Also, it is not possible to configure or modify the PRIVPASS value for a user without also specifying the PRIV value. It is, however, possible to modify the PRIV or AUTH values without additionally specifying a corresponding password.

Syntax

```
CNUSC:USER=[ , AUTH= | , AUTHPASS= | , PRIV= | , PRIVPASS= | , LABEL= } ;
```

Prerequisites

The DSMI-based SNMP agent must be enabled.

The SNMP v3 user must already have an entry in the list of configured SNMP v3 users.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNUSC:USER=3 , AUTH=SHA ;
```

6.5.37 CNUSE – End SNMP v3

Synopsis

This command removes an SNMP v3 user's configuration entry. The command takes a single parameter, USER, which identifies the user to be removed.

Syntax

```
CNUSE:USER= ;
```

Prerequisites

The DSMI-based SNMP agent must be enabled.

The user must be present in the list of configured SNMP v3 users.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNUSE:USER=3 ;
```

6.5.38 CNUSI – Set SNMP v3

Synopsis

This command allows the administrator to create SNMP v3 user accounts that are recognized by the local server. It also allows the administrator to define SNMP v3 user accounts for use in conjunction with SNMP v3 TRAP destinations/managers.

A user is defined with an integer user identifier (USER), optional authentication (AUTH/AUTHPASS) and a label (LABEL), which serves as the username. The USER and LABEL parameters are mandatory. Supported AUTH values are SHA and MD5. The password must have a minimum length of 8 characters, and a maximum length of 24 is enforced. The AUTH and AUTHPASS parameters must be specified together. In other words, it is not possible to configure an AUTHPASS value without having also specified the AUTH value.

Note that only the authentication attributes can be defined with the CNUSI command. If a user requires privacy (encryption) parameters to be applied, the CNUSC command is used to configure them.

Syntax

```
CNUSI:USER=[ , AUTH= , AUTHPASS= ] , LABEL=;
```

Prerequisites

- The DSMI-based SNMP agent must be enabled.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNUSI:USER=3 , AUTH=MD5 , AUTHPASS=user3pass , LABEL=user3;
```

6.5.39 CNUSP – Display SNMP v3

Synopsis

This command displays the current list of configured SNMP v3 users. The passwords are hidden. If a USER value is specified with the command, only that user's details are displayed.

Syntax

```
CNUSP[ :USER= ] ;
```

Prerequisites

The DSMI-based SNMP agent must be enabled.

Attributes

None.

Examples

```
CNUSP;
```

Output Format

```
Configuration SNMP Users
USER  AUTH  AUTHPASS  PRIV  PRIVPASS  LABEL
1     MD5    *****  NONE
2     SHA    *****  NONE
EXECUTED
```

6.5.40 CNXCI – Configuration Cross Connect Initiate

Synopsis

This command initiates a cross connect path across the Signaling Gateway between 2 PCM timeslots; the incoming timeslot (**ITS**) and the outgoing timeslot (**OTS**). If **DUPLEX** is not set to Y, a simplex cross connect is initiated from ITS to OTS.

Syntax

```
CNXCI:OTS=,ITS=,[DUPLEX=];
```

Prerequisites

- The **PCM** on which the **OTS** exists must have already been initiated and the OTS must be within the correct range for the PCM type (0 to 31 for E1 and 1 to 24 for T1 PCMs).
- The **PCM** on which the **ITS** exists must have already been initiated and the ITS must be within the correct range for the PCM type (0 to 31 for E1 and 1 to 24 for T1 PCMs).
- **OTS** is not already assigned elsewhere on the system for output.
- **ITS** is not already assigned elsewhere on the system for input.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNXCI:OTS=1-1-16,ITS=2-1-16,DUPLEX=Y;
```

6.5.41 CNXCE – Configuration Cross Connect End

Synopsis

This command ends a Cross Connect connection across the converter.

Syntax

```
CNXCE:OTS=,[DUPLEX=,];
```

Prerequisites

- The **OTS** must already be initiated as an OTS in a Cross Connect connection path.
- If **DUPLEX=Y** is specified, a duplex connection must already exist for the specified **OTS**.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
CNXCE:OTS=1-1-16;
```

6.5.42 CNXCP – Configuration Cross Connect Print

Synopsis

This command is used to obtain a printout of Cross Connect connection path(s).

Syntax

```
CNXCP:PCM=;  
CNXCP:OTS=;  
CNXCP;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
CNXCP:PCM=1-2;  
CNXCP:OTS=1-1-16;  
CNXCP;
```

Output Format

```
Path Configuration  
OTS      ITS      DUPLEX  
1-1-16   2-1-16   Y  
EXECUTED
```

6.6 SS7 Signaling Commands

The SS7 signaling commands include:

- C7LSI - CCS SS7 Link Set Initiate
- C7LSC - CCS SS7 Link Set Change
- C7LSE - CCS SS7 Link Set End
- C7LSP - CCS SS7 Link Set Print
- C7RTI - CCS SS7 Route Initiate
- C7RTC - CCS SS7 Route Change
- C7RTE - CCS SS7 Route End
- C7RTP - CCS SS7 Route Print
- C7SLI - CCS SS7 Signaling Link Initiate
- C7SLC - CCS SS7 Signaling Link Change
- C7SLE - CCS SS7 Signaling Link End
- C7SLP - CCS SS7 Signaling Link Print

6.6.1 C7LSI – CCS SS7 Link Set Initiate

Synopsis

This command is used to initiate the SS7 link set (LS) between the point code of the unit, the Originating Point Code (OPC), and an adjacent point code, the Destination Point Code (DPC). The user should specify the maximum number of links in the link set (LSSIZE), the SS7 Signaling mode (SS7MD), which identifies the point code size and mode of operation, and the Network Context (NC) the link set exists within.

See [Section 7.2, “Signaling Configuration” on page 137](#) for a more detailed description of the SS7 Signaling configuration.

This command is used to initiate the SS7 link set. Note that the DPC (Destination Point Code) is the adjacent Point Code for the link set.

Syntax

C7LSI:LS=,OPC=,DPC=,LSSIZE=,NI=,SS7MD=,NC=,;

Prerequisites

- The SS7 link set has not already been initiated.
- The SS7MD associated with a NC cannot be different to an SS7MD associated with the same NC anywhere else in the system.
- The NC/DPC combination must be different for all link sets.
- If SS7MD indicates 14-bit Point Code, OPC and DPC must be less than or equal to 16383.
- If SS7MD indicates 16-bit Point Code, OPC and DPC must be less than or equal to 65535.
- Only one OPC can exist within a network context.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

C7LSI:LS=1,NC=1,OPC=1,DPC=2,LSSIZE=2,SS7MD=ITU14,NI=0;

6.6.2 C7LSC – CCS SS7 Link Set Change

Synopsis

This command allows changes to the configuration of an SS7 link set.

Syntax

```
C7LSC:LS=, { [OPC=, ] [DPC=, ] [LSSIZE=, ] [NC=, ] [NI=, ] } ;
```

Prerequisites

- The SS7 link set has already been initiated.
- All configured SS7 links must be blocked.

Note: After blocking, an SS7 link cannot be unblocked until all the boards processing the SS7 signaling are blocked and then unblocked.

- The **LSSIZE** cannot be set to less than the number of links attached to the link set.
- **DPC** must be different across link sets.
- If **SS7MD** indicates a 14-bit Point Code, **OPC** and **DPC** must be less than or equal to 16383.
- Only one **OPC** can exist within a network context.
- The **NC/DPC** combination must be different for all link sets.
- The **NC/OPC** combination must be different for all link sets.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
C7LSC:LS=1, OPC=1, DPC=2, LSSIZE=2 ;
```

6.6.3 C7LSE – CCS SS7 Link Set End

Synopsis

This command is used to end the SS7 link set.

Syntax

```
C7LSE:LS=;
```

Prerequisites

- There should be no signaling links attached to the link set.
- All configured SS7 links within the system must be blocked.

Note: After blocking, an SS7 link cannot be unblocked until all the boards processing the SS7 signaling are blocked and then unblocked.

- There are no C7 Routes using this link set.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
C7LSE:LS=1;
```


6.6.4 C7LSP – CCS SS7 Link Set Print

Synopsis

This command obtains a printout of the attributes for the SS7 link set. If no link is specified, the values for all link sets are shown.

Syntax

C7LSP: [LS=,];

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

C7LSP;

Output Format

| CCS | SS7 | Link Set | | | | | |
|----------|-----|----------|-----|----|--------|-------|--|
| LS | NC | OPC | DPC | NI | LSSIZE | SS7MD | |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 2 | 2 | ITU14 | |
| 2 | 2 | 2 | 4 | 0 | 2 | ANSI | |
| EXECUTED | | | | | | | |

6.6.5 C7RTI – CCS SS7 Route Initiate

Synopsis

This command is used to initiate an SS7 Route (C7RT) to a Destination Point Code (DPC) within a Network Context (NC). An SS7 Route utilizes one (LS1) or two (LS2) link sets which route via adjacent point codes to reach the eventual destination (DPC).

On a per network context basis, a default MTP route may be specified. On a per network context basis, traffic for all point codes not known to the Gateway are routed to the default route. A default route can be specified by setting the DPC value on the route to DFLT.

See [Section 7.2, "Signaling Configuration" on page 137](#) for a more detailed description of the SS7 signaling configuration.

Syntax

C7RTI: C7RT=, DPC=, LS1=, NC=, [LS2=,] [LSH=,] [LABEL=,];

Prerequisites

- The NC must be the same as the NC of the underlying link sets.
- The DPC/NC combination must be unique.
- The link set specified has already been initiated.
- If the route is to an adjacent point code, then all links in the linkset to that point code must be either inhibited or blocked.
- Only one default Route can be configured per Network Context.
- If a default route is specified, a network context cannot be configured with a DPC of 0.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

C7RTI: C7RT=1, LS1=1, DPC=130, LABEL=ROUTE130;

6.6.6 C7RTC – CCS SS7 Route Change

Synopsis

This command is used to change the attributes of an SS7 Route. The **DPC** parameter in this command supports an extra value 'DFLT'. When a route is specified as default, messages destined for DPCs within the network context that have not been configured by the system is sent to the default route.

Syntax

```
C7RTC:C7RT=,NC=, [DPC=, ] [LS1=, ] [LS2=, ] [LSH=, ] [LABEL=, ] ;
```

Prerequisites

- If specified, **LS2** must have same **SS7MD**, **NI**, **NC**, and **OPC** as **LS1**.
- If specified, **LS1** must have same **SS7MD**, **NI**, **NC**, and **OPC** as **LS2**.
- The specified route has already been initiated.
- Any link set specified has already been initiated.
- The **DPC/NC** combination (associated with the route's link sets) must be different for each route.
- If changing any parameter other than the **LABEL**, all SS7 signaling links must be blocked.
Note: After blocking, an SS7 link cannot be unblocked until all the boards processing the SS7 signaling are blocked and then unblocked.
- Only one default route can be configured per network context.
- If a default route is specified, a network context cannot be configured with a **DPC** of 0.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
C7RTC:C7RT=1,NC=1,LS1=2;
```

6.6.7 C7RTE – CCS SS7 Route End

Synopsis

This command is used to end an SS7 Signaling Route.

Syntax

```
C7RTE:C7RT=,NC=;
```

Prerequisites

- All SS7 signaling links must be blocked.
Note: After blocking an SS7 link cannot be unblocked until all the boards processing the SS7 signaling are blocked and then unblocked.
- The specified route and **NC** combination has already been initiated.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
C7RTE:C7RT=1,NC=1;
```

6.6.8 C7RTP – CCS SS7 Route Print

Synopsis

This command shows the attributes of the specified SS7 Route or range of routes within a network context. If no route or network context is specified, the values for all routes are shown.

Syntax

```
C7RTP;
C7RTP:NC=;
C7RTP:C7RT=,NC=;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
C7RTP;
```

Output Format

```
CCITT SS7 Signaling Route Configuration
C7RT  NC DPC  LS1   LS2   LSH   LABEL
1      1  2     1     3     Y     LONDON
2      1  3     2     4     N     EDINBURGH
3      1  DFLT  5     N     DEFAULT
1      2  66    12    13    N     BATH
EXECUTED
```

6.6.9 C7SLI – CCS SS7 Signaling Link Initiate

Synopsis

This command is used to initiate a SS7 Signaling Link ([C7LINK](#)).

The command allows the user to specify the signaling processor ([EQU](#)), Signaling Timeslot ([TS](#)) as well as which SS7 linkset ([LS](#)) the link belongs to. The user may alternatively specify an M2PA SIGTRAN link ([SNLINK](#)) instead of a processor and timeslot for communication of SS7 information. This command is also used to configure HSL links.

See [Section 7.2, “Signaling Configuration” on page 137](#) for a more detailed description of the SS7 signaling configuration.

Syntax

```
C7SLI:C7LINK=,LS=,SLC=,EQU=,TS=,[M56K=,][PCR=,];
C7SLI:C7LINK=,LS=,SLC=,SNLINK=;
C7SLI:C7LINK=,LS=,SLC=,EQU=,M56K=,[PCR=,];
```

Prerequisites

- The specified link has not already been initiated.
- The specified [PCM](#) time slot is not already assigned elsewhere in the system.
- The [PCM](#) on which the timeslot exists has been initiated.
- The board on which the [EQU](#) exists has been initiated.
- The timeslot is a valid timeslot for the [PCM](#) type (up to 31 for an E1 PCM and 24 for a T1 PCM).
- The signaling processor specified by the [EQU](#) parameter must be equipped with a valid board type and not already assigned to a link.
- The link set has already been initiated.
- The board position specified by [EQU](#) must be blocked.

- If **M56K** is set to 3 or 4, the **TS** cannot be specified and if **M56K** is not set to 3 or 4, **EQU** must be specified.
- Only **EQU** signaling processors 1 and 2 can be used if **M56K** is 3 or 4.
- If an **SNLINK** is present, the **EQU**, **TS**, **M56K** and **PCR** cannot be present.
- If an **SNLINK** is specified, its **SNTYPE** must be M2PA.
- If an **SNLINK** is specified, it must be initiated, blocked and cannot be associated with any other SS7 link.
- Either a **SNLINK** or **EQU** must be present.
- SS7 links can use signaling processors 1 to 4 on a Dialogic® DSI SPC14 or SPC12S Network Interface Board or 1 to 64 on a Dialogic® DSI SS7HDP Network Interface Board.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
C7SLI:C7LINK=4,EQU=3-1,TS=3-3-17,LS=1,SLC=5;  
C7SLI:C7LINK=5,SNLINK=1,LS=2,SLC=0;  
C7SLI:C7LINK=2,EQU=1-33,TS=1-2-0,LS=1,SLC=1,M56K=0,HSL=Y
```

6.6.10 C7SLC – CCS SS7 Signaling Link Change

Synopsis

This command is used to change the attributes of an SS7 signaling link.

Syntax

```
C7SLC:C7LINK=, { [EQU=, ] [SNLINK=, ] [TS=, ] [M56K=, ] [PCR=, ] };
```

Prerequisites

- The specified link has already been initiated.
- The specified **PCM** time slot is not already assigned elsewhere in the system.
- The **PCM** on which the timeslot exists has been initiated.
- If specified, the board on which the **EQU** exists has been initiated.
- If specified, the **PCM** on which the timeslot exists has been initiated.
- The timeslot is a valid timeslot number for the **PCM** type (up to 31 for a E1 PCM and 24 for a T1 PCM).
- The signaling processor specified by the **EQU** parameter must be equipped with a valid board type and not already assigned to a link.
- All links within the link set must be blocked.
- If the **EQU**, **PCR** or **M56K** parameters are specified the link must be blocked and C7 links **EQU** board must be blocked. To change the other parameters on the C7 link, the link must be inhibited.
- If **M56K** is set to either 1 or 2, all links on the same board for which **M56K** is set to 1 or 2 must also use the same **M56K** value (that is, only one mode of 56kbts/s operation is supported on any board at one time. However, it is possible for some links to operate at 64kbts/s, while others operate at 56kbts/s).
- The signaling processor specified by the **EQU** parameter must be equipped with a valid board type and not already assigned to a link.
- All links within the link set must be blocked.
Note: After blocking, an SS7 link cannot be unblocked until all the boards processing the SS7 signaling are blocked and then unblocked.
- If the **EQU**, **PCR** or **M56K** parameters are specified, the link must be blocked and the C7 link's **EQU** board must be blocked. To change the other parameters on the C7 link, the link must be inhibited.
- If **M56K** is set to 3 or 4, the **TS** cannot be specified and if **M56K** is not set to 3 or 4, the **EQU** must be specified.
- Only **EQU** signaling processors 1 and 2 can be used if **M56K** is 3 or 4.
- If an **SNLINK** is present, the **EQU**, **TS**, **M56K** and **PCR** cannot be present.

- If an **SNLINK** is specified, it's **SNTYPE** must be M2PA.
- If an **SNLINK** is specified, it must be initiated, blocked and cannot be associated with any other SS7 link.
- The command cannot change between **SNLINK** and **EQU** type C7LINKs.
- SS7 links can use signaling processors 1 to 4 on a Dialogic® DSI SPC14 or SPC12S Network Interface Board or 1 to 64 on a Dialogic® DSI SS7HDP Network Interface Board.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
C7SLC:C7LINK=4,EQU=2-3,TS=3-3-16,M56K=1;
```

6.6.11 C7SLE – CCS SS7 Signaling Link End

Synopsis

This command is used to end an SS7 signaling link.

Syntax

```
C7SLE:C7LINK=;
```

Prerequisites

- The signaling link must be blocked.
- The signaling link must not be monitored.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
C7SLE:C7LINK=1;
```

6.6.12 C7SLP – CCS SS7 Signaling Link Print

Synopsis

This command is used to obtain a printout of the attributes of SS7 signaling link(s). If no link is specified, all initialized links are output.

Syntax

```
C7SLP:[C7LINK=...];
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
C7SLP:C7LINK=1;
C7SLP;
```

Output Format

```
Signaling Link Configuration
C7LINK  EQU    TS    SNLINK  LS      SLC      M56K    PCR
1       1-1    1-3-16      1       1       0       0       N
2       1-2    2-3-16      1       1       1       0       N
3              1       2       0       0       0       N
4              2       2       1       0       0       N
EXECUTED
```

6.7 IP Commands

The IP commands include:

- [IPEPS](#) - Set Ethernet Port Configuration
- [IPEPP](#) - Display Ethernet Port Configuration
- [IPGWI](#) - Internet Protocol Gateway Initiate
- [IPGWE](#) - Internet Protocol Gateway End
- [IPGWP](#) - Internet Protocol Gateway Print

6.7.1 IPEPS – Set Ethernet Port Configuration

Synopsis

This command is used to configure Ethernet ports.

The SGW supports resilient IP connectivity when the user configures a team of two ports in an active/standby role. Three IP bonding teams can be created from the six ethernet ports available. A bonding team, assigned a single IP address, consists of a primary (active) port and a secondary (standby) port. The secondary port IP address should be set to one of the following values:

- STANDBY1 - The configured IP address acts as the standby port in a team with ETH1.
- STANDBY2 - The configured IP address acts as the standby port in a team with ETH2.
- STANDBY3 - The configured IP address acts as the standby port in a team with ETH3.
- STANDBY4 - The configured IP address acts as the standby port in a team with ETH4.
- STANDBY5 - The configured IP address acts as the standby port in a team with ETH5.
- STANDBY6 - The configured IP address acts as the standby port in a team with ETH6.

Syntax

```
IPEPS:ETH=, {[SPEED=,] [IPADDR=,] [SUBNET=,] [SCTP=]};
```

Prerequisites

None.

Limitations

Up to 2 IP ports configured with an IP address may be associated with SCTP.

Attributes

CONFIG.

Examples

```
IPEPS:ETH=1,SPEED=100;
```

```
IPEPS:ETH=2,IPADDR=123.124.125.126,SCTP=Y;
```

```
IPEPS:ETH=3,IPADDR=100.1.1.10,SUBNET=255.255.1.1;
```

```
IPEPS:ETH=4,IPADDR=STANDBY2;
```

The SCTP parameter indicates that the port can be used for SCTP communication.

6.7.2 IPEPP – Display Ethernet Port Configuration

Synopsis

This command displays the Ethernet port configuration. An Ethernet port speed displayed with an H indicates it is half-duplex, otherwise it is full-duplex.

Syntax

```
IPEPP;
```

Prerequisites

None.

Attributes

None.

Examples

```
IPEPP;
```

Output Format

```
<ipepp;
ETH SPEED IPADDR      SUBNET      SCTP
1  AUTO  172.28.148.109  255.255.255.0  Y
2  AUTO  200.2.2.1           255.255.255.0  Y
3  AUTO  0.0.0.0             255.255.255.0  Y
4  AUTO  0.0.0.0             255.255.255.0  N
EXECUTED
```

6.7.3 IPGWI – Internet Protocol Gateway Initiate

Synopsis

This command allows the user to specify a route ([IPGW](#)) to a IP network ([IPNW](#)) via an IP gateway ([GATEWAY](#)) for a range of IP addresses within that network as defined by a network mask ([MASK](#)).

Syntax

```
IPGWI:IPGW=DEFAULT,GATEWAY=;
IPGWI:IPGW={1..31},MASK=,GATEWAY=,IPNW=;
```

Prerequisites

- The IP gateway ID has not been initiated.
- Two gateways cannot have overlapping IP addresses.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
IPGWI:IPGW=1,MASK=255.255.255.0,GATEWAY=194.192.185.1,
      IPNW=128.66.1.0;
```

```
IPGWI:IPGW=DEFAULT, GATEWAY=123.124.125.1;
```

6.7.4 IPGWE – Internet Protocol Gateway End

Synopsis

This command removes an IP route via an IP gateway.

Syntax

```
IPGWE:IPGW=;
```

Prerequisites

- The IP gateway ID has already been initiated.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
IPGWE:IPGW=1,;
```

6.7.5 IPGWP – Internet Protocol Gateway Print

Synopsis

This command prints out routes via IP gateways.

Syntax

```
IPGWP:[IPGW=];
```

Prerequisites

- If specified, the gateway ID should already have been initiated.

Attributes

None

Examples

```
IPGWP;
```

Output Format

```
IP Gateway Configuration
IPGW MASK          GATEWAY          IPNW
1      255.255.255.0  143.123.202.122 128.66.1.0
2      255.255.255.0  111.155.153.111 143.44.174.0
EXECUTED
```


6.8 MML Commands

The MML commands include:

- [MMLOI](#) - MML Log Off Initiate
- [MMLOP](#) - MML Log Off Print
- [MMLOS](#) - MML Log Off Set
- [MMPTC](#) - MML Port Change
- [MMPTP](#) - MML Port Print

6.8.1 MMLOI – MML Log Off Initiate

Synopsis

This command ends the current logon session and allows a new session to be used on the port. It does not affect other MML sessions.

Syntax

```
MMLOI;
```

Prerequisites

This command ends the current logon session and allows a new session to be used on the port. It does not affect other MML sessions.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
MMLOI;
```

6.8.2 MMLOP – MML Log Off Print

Synopsis

This command prints the current logon time-out parameters.

Syntax

```
MMLOP: [PORT=];
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
MMLOP;  
MMLOP:PORT=1;
```

Output Format

```
Log on timeouts  
PORT    TLO  TLOW  
1        30   25  
2        25   20  
3        25   30  
4        25   35  
EXECUTED
```

6.8.3 MMLOS – MML Log Off Set

Synopsis

This command sets the current log-on time-out (**TLO**) and timeout warning (**TLOW**) parameters. If **TLOW** is set to zero, the automatic time-out is disabled. If port (**PORT**) is omitted, the command applies to all ports.

Syntax

```
MMLOS: { [TLO=, ] [TLOW=, ] } [PORT=, ] ;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
MMLOS: TLO=35 ;  
MMLOS: TLOW=19 ;
```

6.8.4 MMPTC – MML Port Change

Synopsis

This command sets the data input/output parameters for serial and telnet data ports.

Note: Only serial port 2 (COM2) is accessible by the user.

Syntax

```
MMPTC: PORT=, { [BAUD=, ] [DBITS=, ] [PARITY=, ] [SBITS=, ] [LINES=, ] [PTMODE=, ] } ;
```

Prerequisites

- No user must be logged on to the port affected.
- For the telnet ports, only the **LINES** parameter can be changed.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
MMPTC: PORT=2, BAUD=300 ;  
MMPTC: PORT=2, SBITS=2 ;
```

6.8.5 MMPTP – MML Port Print

Synopsis

This command gives a printout of the attributes of the serial port. Where the **PORT** parameter is omitted, the printout is provided for all ports. The connected port executing this command is marked with a “*”.

Note: Only serial port 2 (COM2) is accessible by the user.

Syntax

```
MMPTP [ : PORT= ] ;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
MMPTP:PORT=1;  
MMPTP;
```

Output Format

| Serial Port Configuration | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|------|-------|-------|--------|-------|--------|-----------|
| PORT | BAUD | DBITS | SBITS | PARITY | LINES | PTMODE | CONNECTED |
| 1 | 9600 | 8 | 1 | NONE | 20 | DTRDSR | |
| 2 | 1200 | 7 | 2 | EVEN | 8 | NONE | * |
| 3 | | | | | 25 | TELNET | |
| 4 | | | | | 25 | TELNET | |
| EXECUTED | | | | | | | |

6.9 Maintenance Commands

The maintenance commands include:

- [MNBLI](#) - Maintenance Blocking Initiate
- [MNBLE](#) - Maintenance Blocking End
- [MNINI](#) - Maintenance Inhibit Initiate
- [MNINE](#) - Maintenance Inhibit End
- [MNRSI](#) - Maintenance Restart System Initiate

6.9.1 MNBLI – Maintenance Blocking Initiate

Synopsis

This command initiates blocking for boards, signaling links, remote data centers, SIGTRAN links and SIGTRAN Application Servers. A blocking command removes from use the board, link, route or server covered by the command, it also removes their configuration data from the lower levels of the Signaling Gateway and only configuration management maintains knowledge of their existence.

Possible grouping are:

- SS7 signaling links
- Boards
- Remote Data Centers (RDCs)
- SIGTRAN signaling links
- SIGTRAN Remote Application Servers

If the grouping being blocked is already in the blocked state, no action is taken.

If a C7 link has been inhibited, the inhibiting is removed as part of the blocking action.

Syntax

```
MNBLI:C7LINK=...;  
MNBLI:BPOS=...;  
MNBLI:RDC=...;  
MNBLI:SNLINK=...;  
MNBLI:RAS=...;
```

Prerequisites

- The item being blocked has been initiated.
- When blocking a board, all SS7 links on the board must already be blocked.
- If this is the last [RDC](#) to be blocked, then it cannot be blocked until all continuous records and periodic reports are ended.
- An [SNLINK](#) of [SNTYPE](#) M2PA can only be blocked if its associated [C7LINK](#) is either blocked or inhibited.

Attributes

CONFIG, PROMPT

Examples

```
MNBLI:SNLINK=12;  
MNBLI:C7LINK=4;
```

Output Format

```
Blocking C7LINK 1  
Blocking C7LINK 2  
EXECUTED
```

6.9.2 MNBLE – Maintenance Blocking End

Synopsis

This command ends the blocked condition of boards, signaling links, remote data centers, SIGTRAN links and SIGTRAN Application Servers and brings them into service. The command restores configuration data to the lower levels of the Signaling Gateway and brings the timeslots into service. Possible groupings are:

- SS7 signaling links
- Boards
- Remote Data Centers (RDCs)
- SIGTRAN signaling links
- SIGTRAN Application Servers

Note: If an **RDC** has previously been blocked but a file transfer was already in progress, subsequent **MNBLE** commands which use that RDC fail with “NO SYSTEM RESOURCES” until the file transfer is complete.

Syntax

```
MNBLE:C7LINK=...;
MNBLE:BPOS=...;
MNBLE:RDC=...;
MNBLE:SNLINK=...;
MNBLE:RAS=...;
```

Prerequisites

- The item being unblocked has been initiated and is currently blocked.
- When unblocking an SS7 link with a signaling processor (**EQU**), both the board containing the signaling processor and the board containing the signaling timeslot must already be unblocked.
- An SS7 link with a signaling processor (**EQU**) cannot be unblocked until all the boards processing the SS7 signaling are blocked and then unblocked.
- An SS7 link cannot be unblocked if it is on a C7 route that has more than one link set and those link sets have either different OPCs, SS7MDs, NCs or NIs.
- An **RAS** cannot be unblocked unless it has a **SNLINK** attached.
- An M3UA **SNLINK** must have a default **NC** or a mapping of an **NA** into an **NC**.
- An M3UA **SNLINK** must have a mapping of an **NA** into an **NC** or a default **NC** matching the **RAS** **NC** the **SNLINK** is attached to.
- All the underlying **SNLINKs** of a **RAS** must have a mapping of an **NA** into an **NC** or a default **NC** matching the **RAS** **NC**.
- A **C7LINK** cannot be unblocked if an associated **SNLINK** is blocked.
- A network facing M2PA **C7LINK** can only be unblocked if the Signaling Gateway is licensed for M2PA operation.
- If the M3UASHARE parameter is blank only M3UA links or only M2PA links can be unblocked. If M3UASHARE has a value between 1-99 then all SIGTRAN links types can be unblocked.

Note: M2PA can be used for DUAL operation without a license.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
MNBLE:C7LINK=4;
```

Output Format

```
Unblocking C7LINK 1
EXECUTED
```

6.9.3 MNINI – Maintenance Inhibit Initiate

Synopsis

This command initiates the inhibiting of SS7 signaling. When specified without the INH parameter, the C7 signaling link is deactivated and no further signaling is allowed. When specified with **INHIBIT** =Y, the SS7 link inhibit message is sent over the signaling link. The command is also used to deactivate a hard disk drive prior to removal.

Important: In order to maintain RAID array hard disk drive integrity, you should follow the correct procedure detailed in [Section 7.7, “Hard Disk Management” on page 146](#).

Syntax

```
MNINI {[C7LINK=,] [INHIBIT=,] [DRIVE=,]};
```

Prerequisites

- When specified without the **INHIBIT** parameter, the SS7 links have been initiated and are uninhibited.
- The disk drive must be active and not in the 'RESTARTING' state.

Attributes

CONFIG, PROMPT

Examples

```
MNINI:C7LINK=5;
```

```
MNINI:DRIVE=1;
```

Output Format

```
Inhibiting C7LINK 23  
Inhibiting C7LINK 31  
EXECUTED
```

6.9.4 MNINE – Maintenance Inhibit End

Synopsis

This command ends the inhibiting of C7 links. The C7 link is activated and signaling is allowed to proceed. When specified without the **INHIBIT** parameter, the C7 signaling link is activated and signaling is allowed to proceed. When specified with **INHIBIT** =N, the SS7 link uninhibit message is sent over the signaling link. The command is also used to activate a previously deactivated hard disk drive.

Important: In order to maintain RAID array hard disk drive integrity, you should follow the correct procedure detailed in [Section 7.7, “Hard Disk Management” on page 146](#).

Syntax

```
MNINE {[C7LINK=,] [INHIBIT=,] [DRIVE=,]};
```

Prerequisites

- When specified without the **INHIBIT** parameter, the SS7 links have been initiated and are inhibited.
- The disk drive must be in the 'INACTIVE' state.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
MNINE:C7LINK=5;
```

```
MNINE:DRIVE=1;
```

Output Format

```
Uninhibiting C7LINK 23
Uninhibiting C7LINK 31
EXECUTED
```

6.9.5 MNRSI – Maintenance Restart System Initiate

Synopsis

This command restarts the entire system. All current logon sessions are terminated.

If a software update disk is present on a CD or USB, then the software update procedure commences.

If no software update disk is present, but a CD or USB containing a configuration dump is present, this configuration is loaded into memory and the system restarts.

In all other cases, no change to the system configuration occurs and the state of all links is automatically restored.

If **RESET** is set to Y, all configuration data is removed.

If **SYSTYPE** is set, the systems operating mode changes after restart. Possible operation modes are:

- DSC – Digital Signaling Conveter
- SGW – SIGTRAN Signaling Gateway
- SIU – Signaling Interface Unit

Syntax

```
MNRSI : [RESTART=, ] [RESET=Y, ] [SYSTYPE=, ] ;
```

Prerequisites

- **SYSTYPE** can only be set to system types that have been licensed for the unit. See the **CNSYP** command.

Attributes

PROMPT

Examples

```
MNRSI ;
MNRSI : RESET=Y ;
MNRSI : SYSTYPE=SGW ;
MNRSI : RESTART=SOFT ;
```

6.10 Measurement Commands

The measurement commands include:

- [MSC7P](#) - [Measurements SS7 Print](#)
- [MSEPP](#) - [Measurement Ethernet Port Print](#)
- [MSLCP](#) - [Measurement of License Capability Print](#)
- [MSPCP](#) - [Measurements PCM Print](#)
- [MSSLP](#) - [Measurements SIGTRAN Link Print](#)
- [MSSYP](#) - [Measurements System Print](#)

6.10.1 MSC7P – Measurements SS7 Print

Synopsis

This command prints traffic measurements for SS7 signaling links. The measurements are cumulative between system startup and the next time the measurements are reset.

The fields have the following meanings:

- [C7LINK](#) - SS7 signaling Link.
- [OOSDUR](#) - Duration that the link was not in service. This field is not currently supported.
- [RXNACK](#) - Number of negative acknowledgements received.

Note: [RXNACK](#) is not applicable for M2PA SS7 links and is set to 0. See the [MSSLP](#) command description for [SNLINK](#) measurements.

- [RXMSU](#) - Number of message signaling units octets received.
- [RXOCT](#) - Number of SIF and SIO octets received.
- [TXMSU](#) - Number of message signaling units octets transmitted.
- [TXOCT](#) - Number of SIF and SIO octets transmitted.
- [RTXOCT](#) - Octets retransmitted.

Note: [RTXOCT](#) is not applicable for M2PA SS7 links and is set to 0. See the [MSSLP](#) command description for [SNLINK](#) measurements.

- [NCONG](#) - Congestion counter.
- [PERIOD](#) - Time since measurements on the route were last reset. Specified in hours, minutes and seconds.
- [ALIGN](#) - Number of failed signaling link alignment attempts
- [SUERR](#) - Number of signal units in error
- [TBUSY](#) - Duration of local busy condition
- [TCONG](#) - Duration of link congestion
- [NDISCARD](#) - Number of MSUs discarded due to congestion
- [NEVENT](#) - Number of congestion events leading to MSU discard

Syntax

```
MSC7P: [PAGE=,] [C7LINK=,] [RESET=,];
```

Prerequisites

- If specified, the SS7 signaling link must be initiated and unblocked.

Attributes

None

Examples

```
MSC7P:C7LINK=1;
MSC7P;
```

Output Format

SS7 Link Traffic Measurements (Page 1 of 2)

| C7LINK | OSSDUR | RXNACK | RXMSU | RXOCT | TXMSU | TXOCT | RTXOCT | NCONG | PERIOD |
|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|-------|----------|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 188 | 4136 | 188 | 4136 | 0 | 0 | 00:46:39 |
| 2 | 0 | 0 | 188 | 4136 | 188 | 4136 | 0 | 0 | 00:46:39 |
| 3 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 00:46:39 |

EXECUTED

SS7 Link Traffic Measurements (Page 2 of 2)

| C7LINK | ALIGN | SUERR | TBUSY | TCONG | NDISCARD | NEVENT | PERIOD |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|----------|--------|----------|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 00:46:39 |
| 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 00:46:39 |
| 3 | 92 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 00:46:39 |

EXECUTED

6.10.2 MSEPP – Measurement Ethernet Port Print

Synopsis

This command prints the traffic measurements for each Ethernet port on the system taken over a period of time. The meaning of each field in the output is as follows:

The meaning of each field in the output is as follows:

- ETH - Ethernet port number.
- RXKBYTE - Number of kilobytes of data received (in kilobytes)
- RXPKT - Number of packets of data received
- RXERR - Number of receive errors detected
- RXDROP - Number of received packets dropped by the device driver during the measurement period
- TXKBYTE - Number of kilobytes of data transmitted (in kilobytes)
- TXPKT - Number of packets of data transmitted
- TXERR - Number of transmit errors detected
- TXDROP - Number of transmit packets
- PERIOD - The period over which the measurement was taken
- RXFIFO - The number of FIFO buffer errors received
- RXFRAME - The number of packet framing errors received
- RXCOMP - The number of compressed packets received
- RXMULT - The number of multicast frames received
- TXFIFO - The number of FIFO buffer error transmitted
- TXCOLLS - The number of collisions detected on the transmit side
- TXCARRIER - The number of carrier losses detected on the transmit side
- TXCOMP - The number of compressed packets transmitted

Note: Values are reset using the [RESET](#) parameter. MSEPP:RESET=Y; resets the measurement values to 0.

Syntax

```
MSEPP: [RESET=, ] [PAGE=, ];
```

Prerequisites

None.

Attributes

None.

Examples

```
MSEPP: RESET=YES, PAGE=2;
MSEPP;
```

Output Format

Ethernet Port Measurements (Page 1 of 2)

| ETH | RXKBYTE | RXPKT | RXERR | RXDROP | TXKBYTE | TXPKT | TXERR | TXDROP | PERIOD |
|-----|---------|--------|-------|--------|---------|-------|-------|--------|----------|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 16:34:41 |
| 2 | 96324 | 135705 | 0 | 4204E5 | 28169 | 4444 | 0 | 0 | 16:34:41 |
| 3 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 16:34:41 |
| 4 | 3760 | 3273 | 0 | 33615 | 12503 | 3455 | 0 | 0 | 16:34:41 |

EXECUTED

Ethernet Port Measurements (Page 2 of 2)

| ETH | RXFIFO | RXFRAME | RXCOMP | RXMULT | TXFIFO | TXCOLLS | TXCARRIER | TXCOMP | PERIOD |
|-----|--------|---------|--------|--------|--------|---------|-----------|--------|----------|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 16:34:41 |
| 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 16:34:41 |
| 3 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 16:34:41 |
| 4 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 16:34:41 |

EXECUTED

6.10.3 MSLCP – Measurement of License Capability Print

Synopsis

This command prints the traffic measurements for each license on the system capable of supporting throughput licensing.

The meaning of each field in the output is as follows:

- **CAPABILITY** - A licensable capability of the system. This may be a protocol license or an operating mode license. A capability may have been purchased as a software license, shipped as part of the system or bundled as part of another license. If a capability is either not active on the system or doesn't provide measurements then it will not be displayed.
- **RXDATA** - The amount of data received in Kilobytes during the measurement period.
- **TXDATA** - The amount of data transmitted in Kilobytes during the measurement period.
- **RXPEAK** - The peak received data rate in Kilobytes/s averaged over a rolling thirty second time window.
- **TXPEAK** - The peak transmit data rate in Kilobytes/s averaged over a rolling thirty second time window.
- **PEAK** - The peak data rate for both transmitted and received data in Kilobytes/s averaged over a rolling thirty second time window
- **CONGESTION** - The number of times the license has exceeded its throughput threshold.
- **ENFORCEMENT** - The number of times the unit has enforced the license throughput limit.
- **PERIOD** - Time since measurements on the route were last reset. Specified in hours, minutes and seconds.

Note: Values are reset using the RESET parameter. MSEPP: RESET=Y; resets the measurement values to 0.

Syntax

```
MSLCP: [RESET=, ] ;
```

Prerequisites

None.

Attributes

None.

Examples

```
MSLCP;
MSLCP:RESET=Y;
Output Format
Software License Capability Traffic Measurements
CAPABILITY RXDATA TXDATA RXPEAK TXPEAK PEAK CONG ENFORCE PERIOD
M3UA         4204E5 3212E4 154    456    923 1    1    01:33:33
EXECUTED
```

6.10.4 MSPCP – Measurements PCM Print**Synopsis**

This command prints traffic measurements for PCMs. The measurements are cumulative between system startup and the next time the measurements are reset.

The fields have the following meanings:

- PCM - PCM on a board
- FMSLIP - Frame Slip count
- OUTSYN - Out-sync transitions
- ERRSEC - Errored Seconds count
- SEVSEC - Severely Errored seconds count
- [PERIOD](#) - Time since measurements on the route were last reset. Specified in hours, minutes and seconds

Syntax

```
MSC7P: [C7LINK=, ] [RESET=, ] ;
```

Prerequisites

- If specified, the [PCM](#) must be initiated and on an unblocked board.

Attributes

None

Examples

```
MSPCP:PCM=5-1;
MSPCP;
```

Output Format

```
PCM Traffic Measurements
PCM    FMSLIP  OUTSYN  ERRSEC  SEVSEC  PERIOD
3-3    57      60      23      1       23:00:00
3-4    12      35      33      4       01:00:00
4-4    53      55      4       0       01:00:00
EXECUTED
```

6.10.5 MSSLP – Measurements SIGTRAN Link Print

Synopsis

This command prints traffic measurements for SIGTRAN signaling links. The measurements are cumulative between system startup and the next time the measurements are reset.

The fields have the following meanings:

- SNLINK - SIGTRAN signaling link
- RXCK - Number of data chunks received
- TXCK - Number of data chunks transmitted
- RTXCK - Number of data chunks re-transmitted
- NOOS - Number of times a SIGTRAN link has either been aborted or shutdown
- OSDUR - Duration that the link was not in service
- PERIOD - Time since measurements on the route were last reset. Specified in hours, minutes and seconds

Syntax

```
MSSLP: [SNLINK =, ] [RESET=, ] ;
```

Prerequisites

- If specified, the SIGTRAN signaling link must be an initiated and unblocked.

Attributes

None

Examples

```
MSSLP: SNLINK=1;  
MSSLP;
```

Output Format

```
SIGTRAN Link Traffic Measurements  
SNLINK RXCK TXCK RTXCK OSDUR NOOS PERIOD  
1      54  6330  23      0      0  05:00:00  
2      21   12   345     0      0  05:00:00  
3      12   53   500     0      0  05:00:00  
EXECUTED
```

6.10.6 MSSYP – Measurements System Print

Synopsis

This command prints out system related measurements for load and congestion taken over a period of time. The fields in the output have the following meanings:

- NOVLD - The number of periods of congestion (overload) during the measurement period.
- MAXLOAD - Maximum load average measurement taken over one minute (based on the UNIX load average).
- LOADAVG - The average load on the system (based on the UNIX load average) measurement taken over the measurement period.
- PERIOD - The period the measurement was taken over.

Note: Values are reset using the [RESET](#) parameter. MSSYP:RESET=Y; resets the measurement values to 0.

Syntax

MSSYP: [RESET=,] ;

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

MSSYP;

Output Format

```
System Measurements
NOVLD      0
MAXLOAD    28.81%
LOADAVG    2.28%
PERIOD     18:36:55
EXECUTED
```

6.11 Remote Data Center Commands

The Remote Data Center (RDC) commands include:

- [RDCRI](#) - Remote Data Center Continuous Record Initiate
- [RDCRC](#) - Remote Data Center Continuous Record Change
- [RDCRE](#) - Remote Data Center Continuous Record End
- [RDCRP](#) - Remote Data Center Continuous Record Print
- [RDPDI](#) - Remote Data Center Periodic Data Initiate
- [RDPDE](#) - Remote Data Center Periodic Data End
- [RDPDP](#) - Remote Data Center Periodic Data Print
- [RDPRI](#) - Remote Data Center Periodic Report Initiate
- [RDPRC](#) - Remote Data Center Periodic Report Change
- [RDPRE](#) - Remote Data Center Periodic Report End
- [RDPRP](#) - Remote Data Center Periodic Report Print

6.11.1 RDCRI – Remote Data Center Continuous Record Initiate

Synopsis

This command initiates a continuous record collection for which collected data is transferred via Ethernet to a Remote Data Center (RDC).

The period is the maximum amount of time allowed before the transfer of a block of continuous records must be performed.

The minimum number of records that must be collected before the transfer of records can be performed should be specified.

The label is used as the directory name on the Remote Data Center (RDC) that the files are written to.

Syntax

```
RDCRI:RECORD=, CRTYPE=, PERIOD=, MINREC=, RDC1=, LABEL=, [RDC2=, ] ;
```

Prerequisites

- The record has not already been initiated.
- The Signaling Gateway must have an [IPADDR](#).
- If the record is an alarm record, an alarm record must not already exist.
- [RDC1](#) must already be initiated.
- If specified, [RDC2](#) must already be initiated.
- If specified, [RDC2](#) must not equal [RDC1](#).

Limitations

- Before transfer to a RDC can take place, the directory (represented by the label) must exist on the remote site.
- [PERIOD](#) must be in the range 30 seconds to 30 minutes.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
RDCRI:RECORD=1, CRTYPE=ALARM, PERIOD=00:05:00, MINREC=100,  
RDC1=1, LABEL=ALARM;
```

6.11.2 RDCRC – Remote Data Center Continuous Record Change

Synopsis

This command changes the parameters for a continuous record collection for which collected data is transferred via Ethernet to a Remote Data Center (RDC).

The period is the maximum amount of time allowed before the transfer of a block of continuous records must be performed.

The label is used as the directory name on the RDC that the files are written to.

Syntax

```
RDCRC:RECORD=, [PERIOD=, ] [MINREC=, ] [RDC1=, ] [RDC2=, ] [LABEL=];
```

Prerequisites

- The record must already be initiated.
- If specified, RDC1 must already be initiated.
- If specified, RDC2 must already be initiated
- If specified, RDC2 must not equal RDC1.

Limitations

- Before transfer to a RDC can take place, the directory (represented by the label) must exist on the remote site.
- PERIOD must be in the range 30 seconds to 30 minutes.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
RDCRC:RECORD=1, PERIOD=00:05:00, MINREC=100,  
RDC1=1, LABEL=ALARM;
```

6.11.3 RDCRE – Remote Data Center Continuous Record End

Synopsis

This command ends a continuous record.

If DISCARD is set to Y, any data associated with the continuous record is discarded. If DISCARD is not set to Y, and if there is data awaiting transfer, the end continuous record is rejected.

Syntax

```
RDCRE:RECORD=, [DISCARD=Y];
```

Prerequisites

- The report has already been initiated.
- There is no continuous data associated with the continuous record.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
RDCRE:RECORD=1;
```

6.11.4 RDCRP – Remote Data Center Continuous Record Print

Synopsis

This command prints data relating to a continuous record for which collected data is transferred to a Remote Data Center (RDC).

Syntax

```
RDCRP;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
RDCRP;
```

Output Format

```
Remote Data Centre Continuous Record
RECORD CRTYPE PERIOD MINREC RDC1 RDC2 LABEL
1 ALARM 00:05:00 100 2 1 ALARM
EXECUTED
```

6.11.5 RDPDI – Remote Data Center Periodic Data Initiate

Synopsis

This command attaches an SS7 link ([C7LINK](#)), SIGTRAN link ([SNLINK](#)) or PCM ([PCM](#)) to a periodic report.

Syntax

```
RDPDI:REPORT=, [C7LINK=|SNLINK=|PCM=];
```

Prerequisites

- The report has already been initiated.
- The specified SS7 link has already been initiated.
- SS7 links can only be specified for MSC7 reports.
- An association between the report and the SS7 link has not already been initiated.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
RDPDI:REPORT=1,C7LINK=1&&8;
```


6.11.6 RDPDE – Remote Data Center Periodic Data End

Synopsis

This command ends the attachment between an outgoing route and a report.

Syntax

```
RDPDE:REPORT=, [C7LINK= | SNLINK= | PCM=];
```

Prerequisites

- The report has already been initiated.
- An association between the report and the SS7 link has already been initiated.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
RDPDE:REPORT=1,C7LINK=1;
```

6.11.7 RDPDP – Remote Data Center Periodic Data Print

Synopsis

This command prints the outgoing routes associated with a periodic data collection report.

The command prints a list of report elements depending on the type of the report.

Syntax

```
RDPDP:REPORT=;
```

Prerequisites

- The periodic report has been initiated.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
RDPDP:REPORT=1;
```

Output Format

```
Remote Data Centre Periodic Data
REPORT C7LINK
1      1
1      2
1      3
1      5
1      8
EXECUTED
```

6.11.8 RDPRI – Remote Data Center Periodic Report Initiate

Synopsis

This command initiates a report collection period for which data is collected and transferred over Ethernet to a Remote Data Center (RDC).

Reports for outgoing route traffic measurements can be specified.

The label is used as the directory name on the RDC that the files are written to.

The period is the interval between which data is collected. It is rounded to the nearest 5-minute interval.

Data can be added or deleted from the periodic report using the [RDPDI](#) or [RDPDE](#) commands.

Syntax

```
RDPRI:REPORT=, PRTYPE=, PERIOD=, LABEL=, RDC1=, [RESET=, ] [RDC2=, ];
```

Prerequisites

- The report has not already been initiated.
- If specified, [RDC2](#) cannot have the same value as [RDC1](#).
- [RDC1](#) must already have been initiated.
- If specified, [RDC2](#) must already be initiated.

Limitations

Before transfer to an RDC can take place, the directory (represented by the label) must exist on the remote site.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
RDPRI:REPORT=1, PRTYPE=MSC7, PERIOD=01:00:00, RDC1=1, LABEL=SS7;
```

6.11.9 RDPRC – Remote Data Center Periodic Report Change

Synopsis

This command changes parameters relating to a report collection period for which data is collected and transferred over Ethernet to a Remote Data Center (RDC).

Reports for outgoing route traffic measurements can be specified.

The label is used as the directory name on the RDC that the files are written to.

The period is the interval between which data is collected. It is rounded to the nearest 5 minute interval.

Data can be added or deleted from the periodic report using the [RDPDI](#) or [RDPDE](#) commands.

Syntax

```
RDPRI:REPORT=, [PERIOD=, ] [LABEL=, ] [RDC1=, ] [RDC2=, ] [RESET=, ];
```

Prerequisites

- The report must already be initiated.
- If specified, [RDC2](#) cannot have the same value as [RDC1](#).
- If specified, [RDC1](#) must already be initiated.
- If specified, [RDC2](#) must already be initiated.

Limitations

Before transfer to an RDC can take place, the directory (represented by the label) must exist on the remote site.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

RDPRE:REPORT=1,PERIOD=01:00:00,RDC1=1,LABEL=SS7;

6.11.10 RDPRE – Remote Data Center Periodic Report End

Synopsis

This command ends a periodic report.

Syntax

RDPRE:REPORT=;

Prerequisites

- The report has already been initiated.
- There is no periodic data associated with the periodic report.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

RDPRE:REPORT=1;

6.11.11 RDPRP – Remote Data Center Periodic Report Print

Synopsis

This command prints data relating to a periodic report collection period for which collected data is transferred to a Remote Data Center (RDC).

Syntax

RDPRP;

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

RDPRP;

Output Format

```
Remote Data Centre Periodic Report Configuration
REPORT PRTYPE PERIOD  RESET RDC1 RDC2 LABEL
1      MSC7   01:00:00 Y     1    2    SS7
EXECUTED
```

6.12 Signaling Gateway Commands

The Signaling Gateway commands include:

- [SGDPI](#) - Signaling Gateway Destination Point Initiate
- [SGDPC](#) - Signaling Gateway Destination Point Change
- [SGDPE](#) - Signaling Gateway Destination Point End
- [SGDPP](#) - Signaling Gateway Destination Point Print
- [SGIRI](#) - Signaling Gateway Incoming Route Initiate
- [SGIRC](#) - Signaling Gateway Incoming Route Change
- [SGIRE](#) - Signaling Gateway Incoming Route End
- [SGIRP](#) - Signaling Gateway Incoming Route Print
- [SGRKI](#) - Signaling Gateway Routing Key Initiate
- [SGRKE](#) - Signaling Gateway Routing Key End
- [SGRKP](#) - Signaling Gateway Routing Key Print

6.12.1 SGDPI – Signaling Gateway Destination Point Initiate

Synopsis

This command initiates routing to a destination point identified by a routing key or incoming route. Destination selection either selects an Remote Application Server (RAS) or attempts to route to the MTP or IP side on a priority basis. If an Application Server is not configured, the Signaling Gateway attempts to find a route to the Destination Point Code (DPC) of the received message over MTP or IP. The user can configure whether to route the message via MTP or IP if the Point Code is available over both by setting the [RTPRI](#) parameter.

A destination can either be a route (MTP or IP or a combination of both) or a Application Server. If both MTP and IP routes are specified, the default priority indicates which route to the Point Code should be selected first if available. MTPONLY and IPONLY state that no attempt to other domain should be made if the routes through these domains are unavailable.

Syntax

```
SGDPI:DEST=, RTPRI=, [LABEL=, ];  
SGDPI:DEST=, RAS=, [LABEL=, ];
```

Prerequisites

- The destination point has not already been initiated.
- An [RAS](#), if specified, must serve only 1 destination.
- If an [RAS](#) is specified, it must be initialized.
- [RTPRI](#) cannot be set to NONE if an [RAS](#) is not present.
- NONE is the only value allowed for [RTPRI](#) if an [RAS](#) is present.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
SGDPI:DEST=1, RAS=1;
```

6.12.2 SGDPC – Signaling Gateway Destination Point Change

Synopsis

This command changes parameters on the Signaling Gateway destination point.

Syntax

```
SGDPC:DEST=, [RTPRI=, ] [RAS=, ] [LABEL=, ];
```

Prerequisites

- The destination point has already been initiated.
- If an **RAS** is specified, it must serve only one destination.
- If an **RAS** is specified, it must be initialized.
- **RTPRI** cannot be set to NONE if an **RAS** is not present.
- NONE is the only value allowed for **RTPRI** if **RAS** is present.
- If an **RAS** is specified, there cannot be any routing key in the system with a destination to this **RAS**, not having or not matching the **NC/DPC** parameters with the **RAS** **NC/DPC**.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
SGDPC:DEST=1, RAS=1;
```

6.12.3 SGDPE – Signaling Gateway Destination Point End

Synopsis

This command ends a Signaling Gateway destination point.

Syntax

```
SGDPE:DEST=;
```

Prerequisites

- The destination ID has already been initiated.
- The destination ID is not used elsewhere in the system.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
SGDPE:DEST=1;
```

6.12.4 SGDPP – Signaling Gateway Destination Point Print

Synopsis

This command prints the configuration of routing parameters on a SS7 Signaling Gateway.

Syntax

```
SGDPP: [DEST=];
```

Prerequisites

- The destination ID has already been initiated.

Attributes

None

Examples

```
SGDPP;
```

Output Format

```
SS7 Routing Key Configuration
DEST RTPRI   RAS LABEL
1      NONE   1   AS1
2      IP      SGW2
3      MTP     DEST3
EXECUTED
```

6.12.5 SGIRI – Signaling Gateway Incoming Route Initiate

Synopsis

This command initiates an incoming route on a Signaling Gateway. The incoming route is selected by the network and domain (TDM or SIGTRAN) that a data message came from. The network is specified on an SS7 link set on the TDM side and a SIGTRAN link on the SIGTRAN side.

An incoming route can either go directly to a destination or perform analysis of the received message to determine a destination. If analysis fails, or the destination determined by analysis is not available, the incoming route can use the destination associated with it as a default destination.

For **RKTAB**, **DEST**, **NC**, and **DOMAIN**, a value of “null” is supported. “null” indicates a wildcard value and means any value. “null” is the default value for an RKTAB/DEST entry.

Note: The value “null” cannot be used for these parameters elsewhere in the system unless explicitly specified in the command.

Syntax

```
SGIRI:IR=, [NC=, ] [DOMAIN=, ] { [RKTAB=, ] [DEST=, ] } [LABEL=, ];
```

Prerequisites

- If specified, the destination index exists.
- Either an **RKTAB** or **DEST** must exist.
- The incoming route does not already exist.
- The **NC/DOMAIN** combination has not already been specified nor does it form a superset or subset of an existing NC/DOMAIN combination

Note: This check takes into account one or more routing elements marked as a wild card.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
SGIRI:IR=1, DOMAIN=IP,RKI=1;
```

6.12.6 SGIRC – Signaling Gateway Incoming Route Change

Synopsis

This command changes the configuration of a Signaling Gateway incoming route.

For **RKTAB/DEST**, a value of “null” is supported. “null” indicates a wildcard value and means any value. “null” is the default value for an RKTAB/DEST entry.

Note: The value “null” cannot be used for these parameters elsewhere in the system unless explicitly specified in the command.

Syntax

```
SGOPC:IR=, [RKTAB=, ] [DEST=, ] [LABEL=];
```

Prerequisites

- The incoming route already exists.
- If specified, the destination index exists.
- The **NC/DOMAIN** combination has already been initiated.
- Either an **RKTAB** or **DEST** must exist.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
SGIRC:IR=1,DEST=5;
```

6.12.7 SGIRE – Signaling Gateway Incoming Route End

Synopsis

This command ends the configuration of a Signaling Gateway incoming route.

Syntax

```
SGIRE:IR=;
```

Prerequisites

- The incoming route already exists.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
SGIRE:IR=1;
```

6.12.8 SGIRP – Signaling Gateway Incoming Route Print

Synopsis

This command prints the configuration of a Signaling Gateway incoming route.

Syntax

```
SGIRP:[IR=];
```

Prerequisites

- If specified, the **IR** has already been initiated.

Attributes

None

Examples

SGIRP;

Output Format

```

Signaling Gateway Incoming Route Configuration
IR NC DOMAIN RKTAB DEST LABEL
1 1 TDM 1 ORIG1
2 1 SIGTRAN 1 ORIG1
3 2 2 ORIG2
4 3 TDM 3 ORIG3
EXECUTED

```

6.12.9 SGRKI – Signaling Gateway Routing Key Initiate**Synopsis**

This command initiates a routing key or partial routing key to determine a destination identifier. The destination identifier is then used to select the outgoing destination. The Signaling Gateway compares the routing keys with a data message in an attempt to find a data match. If a match is found, the destination identifier is then used to select a route to an eventual destination.

The user can define a number of different tables of routing keys. In the routing model, the incoming route identifies which routing table to use.

Apart from the routing key index and routing key table, the routing key elements are optional and can be wildcarded with a null string.

A routing key is defined as a combination of [NC](#)//[NI](#)/[SI](#)/[OPC](#)/[DPC](#)/[BCIC](#)/[RANGE](#).

For [DPC](#), [OPC](#), [NI](#), [SI](#), [NC](#), [BCIC](#) and [RANGE](#), a value of “null” is supported. “null” indicates a wildcard value and means any value. “null” is the default value for a routing key entry.

Note: The value “null” cannot be used for these parameters elsewhere in the system unless explicitly specified in the command.

Syntax

```
SGRKI: RKTAB=, [NC=, ] [OPC=, ] [NI=, ] [SI=, ] [DPC=, ] [RANGE=, BCIC=, ] DEST=;
```

Prerequisites

- The routing key ID has not already been specified.
- The routing key combination has not already been specified nor does it form a superset or subset of an existing routing key.

Note: This check takes into account one or more routing elements marked as a wild card.

- The destination ID has already been initiated.
- If [SI](#) is set to SCCP, the [BCIC](#)/[RANGE](#) parameters cannot be specified.
- If one of [BCIC](#)/[RANGE](#) are specified, the other must be specified.
- For circuit related keys, the CIC ranges specified for an [NC](#)/[OPC](#)/[NI](#)/[DPC](#) combination must not overlap existing ranges for that combination.
- If an [OPC](#) or [DPC](#) are specified, the [NC](#) cannot be wildcarded.
- [BCIC](#) cannot be negative.
- If the routing key has a destination to an [RAS](#), the [NC](#)/[DPC](#) parameters are required and must match with the RAS NC/DPC.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

SGRKI:RKI=1,RKTAB=,NC=1,OPC=55,DPC=33,DEST=1;

6.12.10 SGRKE – Signaling Gateway Routing Key End**Synopsis**

This end configuration of a routing key or a particular subset of routing keys.

Syntax

SGRK:RKI=;

Prerequisites

- The routing key combination has already been specified.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

SGRKE:RKI=1,NC=1,OPC=55,DPC=33;

6.12.11 SGRKP – Signaling Gateway Routing Key Print**Synopsis**

This command prints the configuration of Routing Keys.

Syntax

SGRKP:[RKI=,][RKTAB=,][DEST=,];

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

SGRKP;

Output Format

Routing Key Analysis configuration

| RKI | RKTAB | NC | NI | SI | OPC | DPC | BCIC | RANGE | DEST |
|-----|-------|----|----|----|-----|------|------|-------|------|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | | 2 | 194 | 0 | 32 | 2 |
| 2 | 1 | 2 | 2 | | 2 | 133 | | | 3 |
| 3 | 1 | 3 | 2 | | | 1332 | | | 43 |

EXECUTED

6.13 SIGTRAN Commands

The SIGTRAN commands include:

- **SNALI** - SIGTRAN Application Server List Initiate
- **SNAL** - SIGTRAN Application Server List End
- **SNALP** - SIGTRAN Application Server List Print
- **SNRAI** - SIGTRAN Remote Application Server Initiate
- **SNRAE** - SIGTRAN Remote Application Server End
- **SNRAP** - SIGTRAN Remote Application Server Print
- **SNNAI** - SIGTRAN Network Appearance Initiate
- **SNNAE** - SIGTRAN Network Appearance End
- **SNNAP** - SIGTRAN Network Appearance Print
- **SNSLI** - SIGTRAN Signaling Link Initiate
- **SNSLC** - SIGTRAN Signaling Link Change
- **SNSLE** - SIGTRAN Signaling Link End
- **SNSLP** - SIGTRAN Signaling Link Print

6.13.1 SNALI – SIGTRAN Application Server List Initiate

Synopsis

This command attaches a list of SIGTRAN links to a Remote Application Server (RAS). The SIGTRAN links provide the SCTP associations to reach the RAS.

See [Section 7.2, “Signaling Configuration” on page 137](#) for a more detailed description of SIGTRAN signaling configuration.

Syntax

```
SNALI:RAS=,SEQ=,SNLINK=;
```

Prerequisites

- The **RAS** has already been initiated.
- The specified SIGTRAN link has already been initiated.
- A SIGTRAN link cannot be specified in more than one hunt sequence position for this server.
- The server/hunt sequence combination must not already be initiated.
- The SIGTRAN links attached to the server must be M3UA and their peers be able to process RASs (that is, not act as Signaling Gateways).
- A **SNLINK** cannot be attached to more than 32 RASs.
- The **SNTYPE** of the **SNLINK** cannot be M2PA.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
SNALI:RAS=1,SEQ=1,SNLINK=1;
```

6.13.2 SNALE – SIGTRAN Application Server List End

Synopsis

This command ends a relationship between an Remote Application Server (RAS) and a SIGTRAN link.

Syntax

```
SNALE:RAS=,SEQ=;
```

Prerequisites

- The RAS sequence combination has already be initiated.
- The last entry in a list of SIGTRAN links attached to a RAS cannot be removed unless the RAS is blocked.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
SNALE:RAS=,SEQ=;
```

6.13.3 SNALP – SIGTRAN Application Server List Print

Synopsis

This command reports the relationship between a SIGTRAN Remote Application Server (RAS) and SIGTRAN links.

Syntax

```
SNALP;  
SNALP:RAS=;  
SNALP:SNLINK=;
```

Prerequisites

- The server/hunt sequence combination has already be initiated.

Attributes

None

Examples

```
SNALP;
```

Output Format

```
Application Server List Configuration  
RAS      RAS LABEL SEQ  SNLINK SNLINK LABEL  
1         AS1      1    1      ASP1  
1         AS1      2    2      ASP2  
2         AS2      1    3      ASP3  
EXECUTED
```

6.13.4 SNRAI – SIGTRAN Remote Application Server Initiate

Synopsis

This command initiates an adjacent Remote Application Server (RAS). A RAS is a logical entity representing an SS7 end point that can process either circuit-related or non circuit-related signaling. The end point is represented by a routing context which uniquely identifies a routing key combination of SIO/**DPC**/**OPC** and CIC range.

See [Section 7.2, “Signaling Configuration” on page 137](#) for a more detailed description of SIGTRAN signaling configuration.

Syntax

```
SNRAI:RAS=,DPC=,RC=,NC=,[PCMD=,][NASP=,][LABEL=,];
```

Prerequisites

- The **RAS** has not already been initiated.
- No other **RAS** can use the routing context.
- No more than 32 RASs can be configured with the same **DPC/NC** combination.
- All RASs within the same **DPC/NC** combination must have the same **PCMD** value.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
SNRAI:RAS=1,DPC=555,RC=1,NC=1;
```

6.13.5 SNRAE – SIGTRAN Remote Application Server End

Synopsis

This command ends a Remote Application Server (RAS).

Syntax

```
SNRAE:RAS=;
```

Prerequisites

- The server has already be initiated.
- There are no SIGTRAN links attached to the server.
- The server is not part of a destination.
- The server must be blocked.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
SNRAE:RAS=1;
```

6.13.6 SNRAP – SIGTRAN Remote Application Server Print

Synopsis

This command prints information relating to a SIGTRAN Remote Application Server (RAS).

Syntax

SNRAP: [RAS=];

Prerequisites

- If specified, the RAS has already be initiated.

Attributes

None

Examples

SNRAP;

Output Format

```
SIGTRAN Application Server Configuration
RAS  DPC      NC  RC      PCMD NASP  LABEL
1    55       1   5       ANY   0      AS1
2    44       2   44      ANY   2      AS2
EXECUTED
```

6.13.7 SNNAI – SIGTRAN Network Appearance Initiate

Synopsis

This command initiates a relationship between a Network Context and a Network Appearance on a per SIGTRAN link basis.

See [Section 7.2, “Signaling Configuration” on page 137](#) for a more detailed description of SIGTRAN signaling configuration.

Syntax

SNNAI:NC=,SNLINK=,SS7MD=,NA=;

Prerequisites

- The SNLINK has been already initiated.
- The SS7MD associated with the NC cannot be different to a SS7MD associated with a NC anywhere else in the system.
- There is a one-to-one relation between NC and NA on a SNLINK.
- The NC cannot be the default value for this SNLINK.
- The SNTYPE of the SNLINK cannot be M2PA.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

SNNAI:NC=1,SNLINK=1,SS7MD=ITU14,NA=63;

6.13.8 SNNAE – SIGTRAN Network Appearance End

Synopsis

This command ends a relationship between an [NC](#) and [NA](#) on a per [SNLINK](#) basis.

Syntax

```
SNNAE: SNLINK=, NC=;
```

Prerequisites

- The [NC](#) has already been initiated.
- The [SNLINK](#) has already been initiated.
- There is a configured relationship between [NC](#) and [NA](#) in this [SNLINK](#).
- There are no unblocked RASs using this [SNLINK](#) and [NC](#) combination.
- If the [SNLINK](#) is unblocked, there are [NA](#) mapping in other Network Contexts for the [SNLINK](#).

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
SNNAE: SNLINK=1, NC=1;
```

6.13.9 SNNAP – SIGTRAN Network Appearance Print

Synopsis

This command gives a printout of the relationship between Network Contexts (NCs) and Network Appearances (NAs) on a per [SNLINK](#) basis.

Syntax

```
SNNAP: [NC=, ] [SNLINK=, ];
```

Prerequisites

- If specified, the [NC](#) or [SNLINK](#) has already be initiated.

Attributes

None

Examples

```
SNNAP;
```

Output Format

```
SIGTRAN Network Appearances
NC  SNLINK  SS7MD NA
1   1        ITU14 63
2   2        ITU14 64
EXECUTED
```

6.13.10 SNSLI – SIGTRAN Signaling Link Initiate

Synopsis

This command initiates a SIGTRAN link. A SIGTRAN link ([SNLINK](#)) provides an SCTP association to an adjacent Application Server Process or Signaling Gateway specified by one ([IPADDR](#)) or two ([IPADDR2](#)) IP addresses as well as the host ([HPORT](#)) and peer ([PPORT](#)) SCTP port. The user should specify the type of SIGTYPE link ([SNTYPE](#)) and which IP end ([END](#)) the Signaling Gateway is acting as.

For M2PA, the SIGTRAN link is associated with a SS7 link by the [C7SLI](#) command.

For M3UA, a default SS7 mode ([SS7MD](#)) and network context ([NC](#)) can be specified. This allows the user to designate an SS7 format and mode of operation to a link. If the user requires the [SNLINK](#) to exist in multiple networks, the user should not specify a default network context nor an SS7 mode, instead they should associate it with a Network Appearance using the [SNNAI](#) command prior to unblocking.

If two IP addresses are specified, the first IP address is used until it proves unreliable, in which case the second IP address is used.

When [SECURE](#) is set to Y, the SIGTRAN link does not come into service on unblocking if it receives messaging from a peer that has an IP address not associated with the SIGTRAN link.

Note: Normal operation for M2PA would be to set one end to client and the other end to server. The signaling gateway provides the ability for both ends to operate as client; however in this case, the SECURE parameter must be set to Y.

See [Section 7.2, “Signaling Configuration” on page 137](#) for a more detailed description of SIGTRAN signaling configuration.

Syntax

```
SNSLI: SNLINK=, SNTYPE=, IPADDR=, END=, [SS7MD=, NC=, ]
      [IPADDR2=, ] [HPORT=, ] [PPORT=, ] [SRTX=, ] [LABEL=, ] [SECURE=, ] ;
```

Prerequisites

- The SIGTRAN link has not already been initiated.
- An IP address of 0.0.0.0 cannot be specified.
- The IPADDR, HPORT, and PPORT combination must not be the same as that of a previously configured SNLINK.
- The [END](#) can only be Client (C) or Server (S).
- Both [NC](#) and [SS7MD](#) parameters must either be present or both parameters must not be present.
- The [SS7MD](#) associated with an [NC](#) cannot be different to a SS7MD associated with the same [NC](#) anywhere else in the system.
- If the [SNTYPE](#) is M2PA, [SS7MD](#), and [NC](#) cannot be specified.

Limitations

None

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
SNSLI: SNLINK=1, SNTYPE=SGM3UA, END=S, IPADDR=193.112.111.123;
SNSLI: SNLINK=2, SNTYPE=M2PA, END=C, IPADDR=193.112.111.123,
      IPADDR2=192.112.111.123 ;
```

6.13.11 SNSLC – SIGTRAN Signaling Link Change

Synopsis

This command changes parameters on a SIGTRAN link. A SIGTRAN link provides an SCTP association to an adjacent SIGTRAN server.

If two IP addresses are specified, the first IP address is used until it proves unreliable in which case the second is used.

An IP address of 0.0.0.0 indicates that the parameter is not configured.

When **SECURE** is set to Y, the SIGTRAN link does not come into service on unblocking if it receives messaging from a peer that has an IP address not associated with the SIGTRAN link.

Note: Normal operation for M2PA would be to set both ends to client.

Syntax

```
SNSLC: SNLINK=, END=, [ IPADDR=, ] [ IPADDR2=, ] [ HPORT= ]  
      [ PPORT=, ] [ SRTX=, ] [ LABEL=, ] [ SECURE=, ] ;
```

Prerequisites

- The SIGTRAN link has already been initiated and is blocked.
- The **END** can only be Client (C) or Server (S).

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
SNSLC: SNLINK=1, PPORT=2905;
```

6.13.12 SNSLE – SIGTRAN Signaling Link End

Synopsis

This command ends the configuration of parameters on a SIGTRAN signaling link.

Syntax

```
SNSLE: SNLINK=;
```

Prerequisites

- The SIGTRAN link has already been initiated and is blocked.
- The SIGTRAN link cannot be ended if it is attached to a Remote Application Server (RAS).
- There cannot be any **NC/NA** mapping configured on the **SNLINK**.
- The **SNLINK** cannot be ended if it is associated with a **C7LINK**.

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
SNSLE: SNLINK=1;
```


6.13.13 SNSLP – SIGTRAN Signaling Link Print

Synopsis

This command prints the configuration of SIGTRAN signaling links.

Syntax

SNSLP: [SNLINK=] [PAGE=,];

Prerequisites

- If specified, the SNLINK link has already been initiated.

Attributes

None

Examples

SNSLP:SNLINK=1;

Output Format

Page 1 of 2 SIGTRAN Signaling Link Configuration

| SNLINK | SNTYPE | SG | END | NC | SS7MD | IPADDR | IPADDR2 | LABEL |
|--------|--------|----|-----|-------|-----------------|-----------------|---------|-------|
| 1 | SGM3UA | S | 1 | ITU14 | 194.192.184.111 | 194.192.198.120 | ASP1 | |
| 2 | SGM3UA | S | 2 | ANSI | 111.143.134.122 | 111.111.123.100 | ASP2 | |

EXECUTED

Page 2 of 2 SIGTRAN Signaling Link Configuration

| SNLINK | HPORT | PSPORT | SRTX | SECURE | LABEL |
|--------|-------|--------|------|--------|-------|
| 1 | 2905 | 2905 | 2 | N | Dual |

EXECUTED

6.14 Status Commands

The status commands include:

- [STALP](#) - Status Alarm Print
- [STRAP](#) - Status Remote Application Server Print
- [STBOP](#) - Status Board Print
- [STCRP](#) - Status C7 Route Print
- [STC7P](#) - Status C7 Link Print
- [STDDP](#) - Status Disk Drive Print
- [STEPP](#) - Status Ethernet Port Print
- [STIPP](#) - Status IP Print
- [STLCP](#) - Status Licensing Print
- [STPCP](#) - Status PCM Print
- [STRDP](#) - Status Remote Data Center Print
- [STSLP](#) - Status SIGTRAN Link Print
- [STSYN](#) - Status System Print
- [STTPP](#) - Network Time Protocol Status Print

6.14.1 STALP – Status Alarm Print

Synopsis

This command requests an alarm status report summary. The interpretation of the ID field in the listing is dependent on the alarm type (see [Chapter 8, "Alarm Fault Code Listing"](#)).

The fields have the following meanings:

- SYS - The number of system alarms
- PCM - The number of PCM alarms
- SIG - The number of signaling alarms
- CLA5 - The number of minor alarms
- CLA4 - The number of major alarms
- CLA3 - The number of critical alarms

Syntax

```
STALP;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
STALP;
```

Output Format

```
Alarm Status
```

```
SYS PCM SIG CLA5 CLA4 CLA3
1   0   1   2   0   0
EXECUTED
```

6.14.2 STRAP – Status Remote Application Server Print

Synopsis

This command provides the status of SIGTRAN servers. It also provides the status of a link when it is serving the Remote Application Server (RAS).

Definitions of the RAS status:

- BLOCKED - The RAS is blocked.
- AVAILABLE - The RAS is available.
- UNAVAILABLE - The RAS is unavailable.
- INSUFF_ASP - The RAS is available but it has insufficient ASPs active as configured in [SNRAP](#) (only valid for load sharing).

Definitions of the ASP within the server:

- DOWN - The link attached to the server is down.
- ACTIVE - The link attached to the server is active.
- INACTIVE - The link attached to the server is inactive.

Definitions of TRMD (Traffic Mode):

- LS - Load sharing mode
- OR - Override mode
- BC - Broadcast mode

Syntax

STRAP:[[RAS](#) =...];

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

STRAP:[RAS](#)=1;

Output Format

Application Server Status

| RAS | RAS STATUS | SNLINK | ASP STATUS | TRMD | ASP ID | RAS LABEL |
|-----|------------|--------|------------|------|--------|-----------|
| 1 | AVAILABLE | 1 | ACTIVE | LS | | AS1 |
| 2 | AVAILABLE | 2 | DOWN | LS | | AS2 |
| 2 | AVAILABLE | 3 | INACTIVE | LS | | AS2 |
| 3 | BLOCKED | | | | | |

EXECUTED

6.14.3 STBOP – Status Board Print

Synopsis

This command requests a status report of boards on the system. Possible status values are:

- INACTIVE - The board is not in operation.
- RESETTNG - The board is undergoing a reset.
- ACTIVE - The board is operational.
- FAILED - The board has failed and is out of service.

Syntax

```
STBOP: [BPOS=...];
```

Prerequisites

- If specified, the board should have already been initiated.

Attributes

None

Examples

```
STBOP: BPOS=1;
```

Output Format

```
Board Status
BPOS STATUS
Active
Failed
Blocked
EXECUTED
```

6.14.4 STCRP – Status C7 Route Print

Synopsis

This command shows the status of the specified SS7 route or range of routes within a network context. If no route or network context is specified, then the values for all routes are shown.

The command indicates whether a route is available or unavailable as well as indicating which routsets within the route are available or unavailable. The command also provides the congestion state of the route.

Possible ROUTE STATUS values are:

- Available
- Unavailable
- Available - The route is available for traffic to the remote point code of the route.
- Unavailable - The route is unavailable for traffic to the remote point code of the route.

Possible CONG LEVEL values are:

- 0 no congestion
- 1, 2 or 3 indicating the level of congestion

Possible LS1 STATUS and LS2 STATUS values are:

- Available - The linkset on the route is available for traffic to the adjacent point code.
- Unavailable - The linkset on the route is unavailable for traffic to the adjacent point code.

Syntax

```
STCRP;
STCRP: NC=;
STCRP: C7RT=, NC=;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

STCRP;

Output Format

```

CCITT SS7 Route Status
C7RT NC DPC      ROUTE STATUS CONG LEVEL LS1 STATUS  LS2 STATUS  LABEL
1     1  1       Available    0           Available
2     1  2       Available    0           Unavailable Available
64    4  99      Unavailable  0           Unavailable
EXECUTED

```

6.14.5 STC7P – Status C7 Link Print**Synopsis**

This command requests a status report of the SS7 signaling links or SS7 link sets.

L2 STATUS - Possible values are:

- In service
- Out of service
- Proc outage
- Aligned rdy
- Init align
- Align not rdy

L3 STATUS - Possible values are:

- Available
- Unavailable
- Congested
- Deactivated (the link has been deactivated)
- Blocked (the link is blocked)

L3 BLOCKING STATUS - Possible values are:

- INHR - The link is remotely inhibited
- INHL - The link is locally inhibited
- BLKR - The link is remotely blocked
- COIP - Changeover is in progress
- CBIP - Changeback is in progress
- LIIP - Local link inhibiting is in progress
- LUIP- Local link uninhibiting is in progress

Syntax

```

STC7P: [PAGE=...] [C7LINK=...];
STC7P: [PAGE=...] [LS=...];

```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

STC7P;

Output Format

```
CCS SS7 Signalling Link Status (Page 1 of 2)
C7LINK  LS      EQU      TS      SNLINK  L2 STATUS      L3 STATUS
1        1        1-3     1-3-16
2        1        1-4     1-4-16      IN SERVICE    AVAILABLE
3        2        3-3     3-3-16      INITIAL ALIGN UNAVAILABLE
4        2        3-4     3-4-16      OUT OF SERVICE DEACTIVATED
EXECUTED
```

```
CCS SS7 Signalling Link Status (Page 2 of 2)
C7LINK  L2 STATE      L3 STATE      L3 BLOCKING STATUS
1        1        1-3     1-3-16      BLOCKED      -----
2        1        1-4     1-4-16      IN SERVICE    AVAILABLE     ----- LIIP -----
3        2        3-3     3-3-16      INITIAL ALIGN UNAVAILABLE     -----
4        2        3-4     3-4-16      OUT OF SERVICE DEACTIVATED -----
EXECUTED
```

6.14.6 STDDP – Status Disk Drive Print**Synopsis**

This command displays the status of all hard disk drives within the RAID array.

Note: This command is not available for the Dialogic® DSI SS7G21 and SS7G22 Signaling Servers.

Syntax

STDDP;

Prerequisites

None.

Attributes

None.

Example

STDDP;

Output Format

```
STDDP;
Disk Drive Status
DRIVE STATUS
0      UP
1      UP
EXECUTED
```

The STATUS field will display one of the following values:

- UP – The disk drive is operational. If the disk forms part of a RAID array then all the RAID devices on this drive are in an 'active sync state'.
- DOWN– The disk drive is non operational. If the disk forms part of a RAID array then one or more of the Raid devices on this drive is faulty.
- RESTARTING – One or more of the raid devices on this drive is synchronizing with another Raid device. The disk is considered 'non operational' until synchronization is complete.

- **INACTIVE** – The drive is not configured as part of the RAID array and therefore is not in use. This may be due to user action through MMI, the drive not being physically present at startup or a failed drive being removed by the operating software at startup from the RAID array.

Caution: Before replacing a failed drive, the drive must first be taken out of service using the [MNINI](#) command. Once the replacement drive is in place, the disk can be restored to service using the [MNINE](#) command. See [Section 7.7, “Hard Disk Management” on page 146](#).

6.14.7 STEPP – Status Ethernet Port Print

Synopsis

This command provides the status of Ethernet ports on the system. The parameters output are:

- **ETH** - The Ethernet port identity.
- **PARTNER** - Identifies the other port member of a port bonding team.
- **SPEED** - The speed of the Ethernet port (10 / 100 / 1000).
- **DUPLEX** - Whether the port is FULL or HALF Duplex.
- **STATUS** - Whether the port is UP or DOWN. If the port is in a team, and it is “up”, the status indicates instead whether the port is ACTIVE or in STANDBY.

Syntax

STEPP;

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

STEPP;

Output Format

| ETH | PARTNER | SPEED | DUPLEX | STATUS |
|-----|---------|-------|--------|---------|
| 1 | | | | DOWN |
| 2 | | 100 | FULL | UP |
| 3 | 4 | 1000 | FULL | ACTIVE |
| 4 | 3 | 1000 | FULL | STANDBY |

EXECUTED

6.14.8 STIPP – Status IP Print

Synopsis

This command sends four ICPM (Internet Control and Management Protocol) Echo Request frames to the specified remote IP address and measures the maximum round trip time, similar to the standard Unix ping command. SEND shows the number of frames transmitted. RECV shows the number of replies received and MAXRTD shows the maximum delay between sending a frame and receiving a reply, in milliseconds. The measurement is accurate to 10ms, hence any value less than 10ms is displayed as '<10'. If the destination IP address is not reachable, RECV is shown as 0 and MAXTP as '-'.

Syntax

STIPP:IPADDR=;

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

STIPP:IPADDR=173.132.23.3;

Output Format

| IP Status | SEND | RCV | MAXRTD |
|----------------|------|-----|--------|
| IPADDR | 4 | 4 | 20 |
| 193.195.185.16 | | | |
| EXECUTED | | | |

6.14.9 STLCP – Status Licensing Print

This command prints the status of each license on the system.

The meaning of each field in the output is as follows:

- **CAPABILITY** — A licensable capability of the system. This may be a protocol license or an operating mode license. A capability may have been purchased as a software license, shipped as part of the system or bundled as part of another license.
- **STATUS** — Status of the capability on the system where:
 - **NONE** — This capability is not present. It requires a software license.
 - **INACTIVE** — The license is present but not running for software reasons e.g. The license is for a different mode of operation or the capability is dependant on another capability that is not active.
 - **DEACTIVATED** — The license is present but not running due to configuration reasons (it has been user deactivated in CNSYS).
 - **ACTIVE** — The license is active.
 - **ERROR** — This capability cannot be activated as it depends on a software license which his not present (e.g. TCAP is present but SCCP is not).
 - **RESTART** — The license is present but requires a system restart to allow activation.
 - **CONGESTED** — The throughput congestion level has been reached for the capability.
 - **ENFORCED** — The licensed traffic rate has been exceeded for a extended period and the system is now limiting traffic to the licensed rate for the capability.
- **LINKS** — The licensed number of links for the capability. Blank means not applicable.
- **LICRATE** — The licensed throughput rate in Kilobytes/s for the capability. Blank means not applicable.
- **SHARERATE** — the allocated throughput determined by the value of the M3UASHARE parameter. Blank means that M3UASHARE is also blank.
- **CREDIT** — The current throughput account credit if applicable. The throughput account credit is expressed as a % of the maximum account credit.

Note: The maximum account credit is the licensed throughput rate * 30. The throughput account credit is decremented each time traffic passes through the system. The throughput account is incremented every second by the value of the licensed throughput rate. If the licensed throughput is exceeded for a sustained period of time the credit available will drop. When the credit drops to 50% of the maximum throughput credit a congestion alarm will fire. When the credit drops to 0% (i.e. there is no credit left) throughput enforcement will occur limiting throughput to the licensed rate. Throughput enforcement will be maintained until the account credit returns to 75% or above of the maximum throughput credit.

Syntax

```
STLCP;
```

Prerequisites

None.

Attributes

None.

Examples

```
STLCP;
```

Output Format

```
stlcp;
Software License Capability Status
CAPABILITY  STATUS  LINKS  LICRATE  SHARERATE  CREDIT
SIU          INACTIVE
SGW          ACTIVE
DSC          NONE
SCTP        ACTIVE
M2PA        ACTIVE      256      2460      1844      75
M3UA        ACTIVE      256      2460      616       25
MTP          ACTIVE      192
SNMP        DEACTIVATED
EXECUTED
```

6.14.10 STPCP – Status PCM Print**Synopsis**

This command requests a status report of the PCMs. The **PCM** status is one of the following:

- OK - Normal operational state
- PCM Loss - No signal sensed on the PCM input
- Sync Loss - Loss of frame alignment since no frame synchronization has been received
- RAI - Remote alarm indication. The remote end indicates that it is OK, but also indicates that it is detecting an error condition.
- AIS - Alarm indication signal. The remote side sends all ones indicating that there is an error condition, or it is not initialized.
- BER > 1:10³ - The **PCM** is encountering a Bit Error Rate (BER) of 10³.
- BER > 1:10⁵ - The **PCM** is encountering a BER of 10⁵.

The Clock Status field is one of the following:

- OK - The board is detecting a valid **PCM** signal which could potentially be used for synchronization.
- Standby - The board is detecting a valid **PCM** signal which will be used for synchronization in the event of failure of the active clock source.
- Active - The board is detecting a valid **PCM** signal which is currently providing synchronization for the Signaling Gateway.
- Not OK – The input to the board is not currently suitable for use as a synchronization source.
- Fault - A fault has been detected on the board which prevents it being used as a synchronization source.

Syntax

```
STPCP;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

CONFIG

Examples

```
STPCP;
```

Output Format

```
PCM Status
PCM SYNCPRI PCM Status Clock
1-3 1 PCM Loss Fault
1-4 2 SYNC Loss Not OK
2-3 3 AIS Not OK
2-4 4 RAI OK
3-3 1 OK Active
3-4 1 OK OK
EXECUTED
```

6.14.11 STRDP – Status Remote Data Center Print**Synopsis**

This command requests a status report for the Remote Data Centers (RDCs). The status can be one of the following:

- OK - The RDC is available to receive data.
- Initiating - Initiating connection to the RDC.
- Failed - The RDC is not available to receive data.
- Blocked - The RDC is user blocked from receiving data.

File transfer is to the lowest numbered available RDC.

Note: If the system does not have an [IPADDR](#), then status indicates OK for communication with the RDC; however, no data can be transferred.

Syntax

```
STRDP;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
STRDP;
```

Output Format

```
Remote Data Centre Status
RDC IPADDR RDCSTAT
1 25.03.203.52 Initiating
2 102.03.211.140 OK
EXECUTED
```

6.14.12 STSLP – Status SIGTRAN Link Print

Synopsis

This command requests the status of a SIGTRAN link.

Definitions for the status of the peer signaling process (SP):

- BLOCKED - The signaling link is blocked.
- UNAVAILABLE - The signaling link is unavailable.
- AVAILABLE - The signaling link is available.

Note: The SP STATUS is blank for M2PA SNLINKs. Layer 2 status is provided by the [STC7P](#) command.

Definitions for SCTP Status are:

- CONFIGURING - Association is being configured.
- COOKIE_WAIT - Association is waiting for a cookie.
- COOKIE_ECHOED - Association has echoed a cookie.
- CLOSED - Association is closed.
- INITIATING - Association is initiating.
- ESTABLISHED - Association is established.
- SHUTDOWN_PENDING - Association is pending shutdown.
- SHUTDOWN_SENT - Association has sent shutdown.
- SHUTDOWN_RECEIVED - Association has received shutdown.
- SHUTDOWN_ACK_SENT - Association has shutdown.

Definitions of the status of Links IP Addresses are:

- INACTIVE - Network address is inactive.
- ACTIVE - Network address is available for data transfer.
- BLOCKED - Network address is blocked.

The Retransmission TimeOut (RTO) is a time between 500 and 6000 milliseconds where SCTP waits before retransmitting an octet to an IP address. The timeout dynamically changes based on line conditions and provides an indication on the quality of the connection to that IP address.

Syntax

STSLP:[[SNLINK](#)=...];

Prerequisites

- If specified, the SIGTRAN link should already have been initiated.

Attributes

None

Examples

STSLP:[SNLINK](#)=1;

Output Format

```
Page 1 of 2 SIGTRAN Signaling Link Status
SNLINK SP STATUS   SCTP STATUS   LABEL
1      AVAILABLE   ESTABLISHED
2      BLOCKED
EXECUTED
```

```
Page 1 of 2 SIGTRAN Signaling Link Status
SNLINK IPADDR STATUS IPADDR RTO IPADDR2 STATUS IPADDR2 RTO LABEL
1      ACTIVE      500      ACTIVE      1500
2      BLOCKED
EXECUTED
```

6.14.13 STSYP – Status System Print

Synopsis

This command provides a summary of the load, uptime and alarms on the system. The meaning of each field in the output is as follows:

- CPU - A string identifying the CPU type and speed
- MEMORY - The amount of RAM in the system
- UPTIME - The length of time the application software has been running
- NRESTART - The number of times the system has restarted since factory installation
- LOADAVG1 - The UNIX load average measurement taken over one minute
- LOADAVG5 - The UNIX load average measurement taken over five minutes
- LOADAVG15 - The UNIX load average measurement taken over 15 minutes
- ALMSYS - The number of system alarms
- ALMPCM - The number of PCM alarms
- ALMSIG - The number of signaling alarms
- ALMCLA1 - The number of minor alarms
- ALMCLA2 - The number of major alarms
- ALMCLA3 - The number of critical alarms

Syntax

```
STSYP;
```

Prerequisites

None

Attributes

None

Examples

```
STSYP;
```

Output Format

```
System Status
CPU          2 X Intel(R) Xeon(TM) CPU 2.4GHz
MEMORY      1024MB
UPTIME      01:04:43
NRESTART    307
LOADAVG1    1.48%
LOADAVG5    1.49%
LOADAVG15   1.45%
ALMSYS      0
ALMPCM      9
ALMSIG      4
ALMCLA1     0
ALMCLA2    13
ALMCLA3     0
EXECUTED
```

6.14.14 STTP – Network Time Protocol Status Print

Synopsis

This command is used to display the status of the Network Time Protocol servers configured on the unit.

Syntax

```
STTP;
```

Prerequisites

None.

Attributes

None.

Example

```
STTP;
Status of NTP Servers
NTPSER IPADDR      STATUS    STRATUM OFFSET    LABEL
1      192.168.0.1  SYSPEER   3      -0.025594 NTPSERV1    2      192.168.0.2  ACTIVE      4
-0.025477 NTPSERV2
EXECUTED
```

Description

Meaning of fields in the print command:

- **Status**

| Status | Description |
|-------------|---|
| INACTIVE | The NTP service is disabled. |
| UNREACHABLE | The NTP server is unreachable. |
| REJECT | The NTP server has been rejected by the server selection algorithm. |
| ACTIVE | NTP time information is being received from this server. |
| SYSPEER | NTP has selected this server to synchronize to. |

- **Stratum**

The NTP Stratum value reported by the NTP server.

- **Offset**

The difference in seconds between the clock (UTC) as configured on the unit and the UTC time as reported by the NTP server.

Chapter 7: Configuration Overview

This section provides an overview of the various components that are used in the configuration of a Signaling Gateway and how these components relate to each other. The Signaling Gateway configuration is described in the following categories:

- [System, Hardware and Signaling Configuration](#) – The configuration of system Ethernet addresses, signaling boards and PCMs.
- [Signaling Configuration](#) – The transmission of messages on the SS7 and IP side.
- [Routing Configuration](#) – The route SS7 messages take through the gateway.
- [Management and Operations](#) – Bringing entities in and out of service and monitoring system status.
- [Default Routing](#) – Allocation of a default route to MTP.
- [Resilience](#) – Two Signaling Gateways acting as a single Point Code.
- [Hard Disk Management](#).

7.1 System, Hardware and Signaling Configuration

7.1.1 System Configuration

Each Signaling Gateway contains four or six (depending on equipment type) Ethernet ports allowing it to communicate with four or six separate IP networks. The Ethernet interface is used for the transfer of SS7 signaling information over IP, for telnet communication with the management interface and the transfer of files (such as those for software update and configuration backup) using ftp between the Signaling Gateway and a remote server. By default the SCTP value on this 4th port (ETH 4) is set to N preventing the port from use for SIGTRAN traffic - this is configurable using the [IPEPS](#) command.

A Signaling Gateway can be given a presence within an IP network using its first Ethernet port configured with an IP Address ([IPADDR](#)) and a Subnet Mask ([SUBNET](#)). If the Signaling Gateway is communicating with a destination that is not on the local subnet, a default IP gateway ([GATEWAY](#)) can be configured.

Additional IP networks are configured on the remaining Ethernet ports using the [IPEPS](#) command and additional gateway set with the [IPGWI](#) command.

Figure 4. Multiple IP Networks

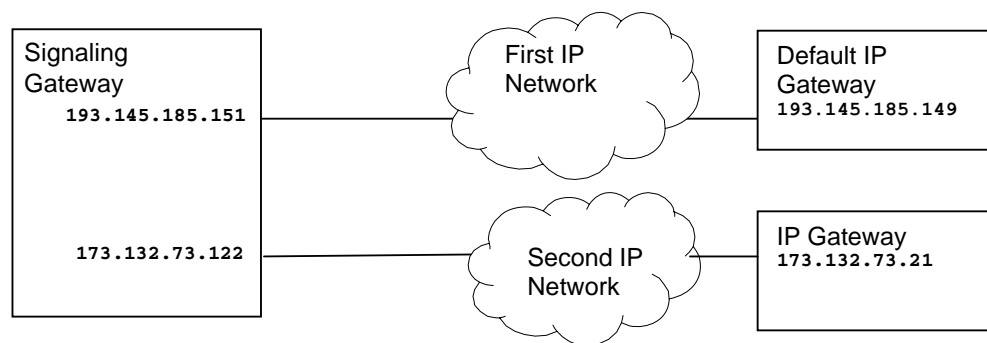


Figure 4 demonstrates the Signaling Gateway configured to exist in multiple IP networks. Example MML for the above configuration is:

```

IPEPS:ETH=1,IPADDR=193.145.185.151,SUBNET=255.255.255.0,SCTP=Y;
IPEPS:ETH=2,IPADDR=173.132.73.122,SUBNET=255.255.255.0,SCTP=Y;
IPGWI:IPGW=1,GATEWAY=193.145.195.149;
  
```

7.1.2 Boards and PCMs

A Signaling Gateway contains a number of SS7 signaling boards located in individual board positions (**BPOS**). Signaling boards are managed using the CNBOX commands.

A Dialogic® DSI SS7 Network Interface Board can terminate up to two PCM (**PCM**) trunks for connection to either a Signaling End Point (SEP) or Signaling Transfer Point (STP). When configuring the PCM, the user can specify whether it should act as E1 or T1 as well as its frame format (**FF**) and line code (**LC**). The configuration of a PCM also determines whether the port signal is to be used as the external clock synchronization source of the Signaling Gateway. Each PCM can be assigned a synchronization priority (**SYNCPRI**) specifying the priority it has within the Signaling Gateway to receive the external clock for the system. The PCM in the system with the lowest numbered synchronization priority that is active and in service provides the clocking source for the Signaling Gateway. If the current PCM providing clock for the system goes out of service, the PCM with the next highest clock priority that is in service provides clock for the Signaling Gateway. If a PCM's synchronization priority is set to 0, that PCM never provides clock for the system.

PCMs are managed using the CNPCx commands.

Figure 5. Physical Configuration

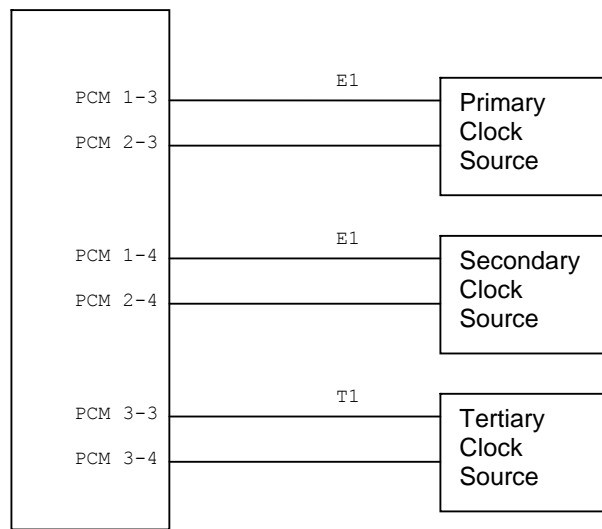


Figure 5 demonstrates a Signaling Gateway configured with three boards and six PCMs, four E1 and two T1 connect to primary, secondary and tertiary clock sources. Example MML for the above configuration is:

```
CNBOI:BPOS=1,BRDTYPE=SPCI2S-4-2,SIGTYPE=SS7;
CNBOI:BPOS=2,BRDTYPE=SPCI2S-4-2,SIGTYPE=SS7;
CNBOI:BPOS=3,BRDTYPE=SPCI2S-4-2,SIGTYPE=SS7;
CNPCI:PCM=1-3,PCMTYPE=E1,SYNCPRI=1;
CNPCI:PCM=2-3,PCMTYPE=E1,SYNCPRI=1;
CNPCI:PCM=1-4,PCMTYPE=E1,SYNCPRI=2;
CNPCI:PCM=2-4,PCMTYPE=E1,SYNCPRI=2;
CNPCI:PCM=3-3,PCMTYPE=T1,SYNCPRI=3;
CNPCI:PCM=3-4,PCMTYPE=T1,SYNCPRI=3;
```


7.2 Signaling Configuration

7.2.1 SS7 Configuration

A Link Set (LS) is the set of signaling links between an Originating Point Code (OPC) on the Signaling Gateway and an adjacent Destination Point Code (DPC). When specifying a link set the user can specify the MTP type and point code size (SS7MD), the SS7 Network Identifier (NI) and the logical network (NC) it belongs in. Link sets are managed using the C7LSx commands.

An SS7 Route (C7RT) identifies the link sets that are used to reach an eventual Destination Point Code (DPC). Two SS7 routes cannot have the same DPC within the same network. An SS7 route utilizes link sets (LS1 and LS2) to adjacent points to reach an eventual destination. An adjacent point can be a Signaling Transfer Point (STP), where SS7 information is forwarded on into the SS7 network, or the eventual destination. SS7 routes are managed using the C7RTx commands.

SS7 MTP2 Operation

An SS7 signaling link (C7LINK) processor (EQU) receives and transmits SS7 signaling information over a timeslot (TS) on an E1 or T1 bearer or a serial V.11 interface. An SS7 Signaling link is identified uniquely within an SS7 link set by the Signaling Link Code (SLC). Signaling links are managed using the C7SLx commands.

Figure 6. SS7 Signaling Example

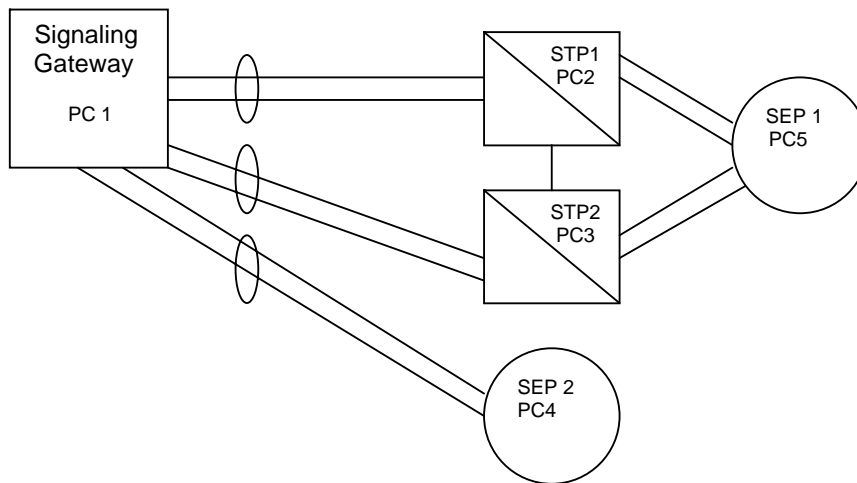


Figure 6 demonstrates a Signaling Gateway routing to two SS7 Signaling End Points (SEP). The first SEP is reached by a pair of STPs, while the second SEP is reached directly from the Signaling Gateway. Example MML for the above configuration is:

```

C7LSI:LS=1,OPC=1,DPC=2,SS7MD=ITU14,LSSIZE=2,NI=2,NC=1;
C7LSI:LS=2,OPC=1,DPC=3,SS7MD=ITU14,LSSIZE=2,NI=2,NC=1;
C7LSI:LS=3,OPC=1,DPC=4,SS7MD=ITU14,LSSIZE=2,NI=2,NC=1;
C7SLI:C7LINK=1,LS=1,EQU=2-1,TS=1-3-16,SLC=0;
C7SLI:C7LINK=2,LS=1,EQU=3-1,TS=2-3-16,SLC=1;
C7SLI:C7LINK=3,LS=2,EQU=2-2,TS=1-4-16,SLC=0;
C7SLI:C7LINK=4,LS=2,EQU=3-2,TS=2-4-16,SLC=1;
C7SLI:C7LINK=5,LS=3,EQU=2-3,TS=3-3-16,SLC=0;
C7SLI:C7LINK=6,LS=3,EQU=3-3,TS=3-4-16,SLC=1;
C7RTI:C7RT=1,NC=1,DPC=2,LS1=1,LABEL=STP1;
C7RTI:C7RT=2,NC=1,DPC=3,LS1=2,LABEL=STP2;
C7RTI:C7RT=3,NC=1,DPC=4,LS1=3,LABEL=SEP2;
C7RTI:C7RT=4,NC=1,DPC=5,LS1=1,LS2=2,LABEL=SEP1;
  
```

7.2.2 High Speed Signaling Links Configuration

The Signaling Gateway supports HSL in accordance with ITU Q.703 Annex A. Two HSL links are configurable on a Dialogic® DSI SS7HDP Network Interface Board using processor (EQU) values of **x-1** or **x-33** (x is the board position).

The timeslot on the C7SLx TS parameter must be set to 0 for a HSL link, that is the timeslot for a HSL link must be set to **x-y-0** (x is the board position, y is the PCM value).

Only an HSL link can be configured on an unstructured PCM, and a T1 HSL link must be received on the same board as it is processed. Additionally, an SS7 link cannot be changed from HSL to LSL or from LSL to HSL. A timeslot (TS) can only be associated with a structured HSL link if it is not associated with a signaling link, cross connect, monitoring or circuit group.

The following commands demonstrate HSL board, PCM and signaling link configuration.

```
cnboi:bpos=1,brdtype=ss7hdp-64-4,sigtype=ss7;
cnpci:pcm=1-1,pcmtype=e1,ff=uns;
cnpci:pcm=1-2,pcmtype=e1;

c7lsi:ls=1,nc=1,opc=10,dpc=20,ni=2,lssize=2,ss7md=itu14;
c7sli:c7link=1,equ=1-1,ts=1-1-0,ls=1,slc=0,m56k=0,hsl=y;
c7sli:c7link=2,equ=1-33,ts=1-2-0,ls=1,slc=1,m56k=0,hsl=y;
```

7.2.3 SS7 M2PA Operation

The Signaling Gateway is capable of replacing TDM SS7 links with signaling links operating over IP providing the equivalent functionality to MTP layer 2 by using the SIGTRAN M2PA protocol. Typically M2PA signaling links would be used when the Signaling Gateway is either offering longhaul over IP operation between two SEPs, or when two Signaling Gateways are acting as a single Point Code and the inter Signaling Gateway SS7 link is provided by M2PA over IP.

For M2PA operation, rather than associating an EQU or TS with an SS7 signaling link (C7LINK), the SS7 link is instead associated with a SIGTRAN link (SNLINK) defined to be of type M2PA. The SIGTRAN link is used to identify a SCTP Association as being used for M2PA operation.

Figure 7. M2PA Example

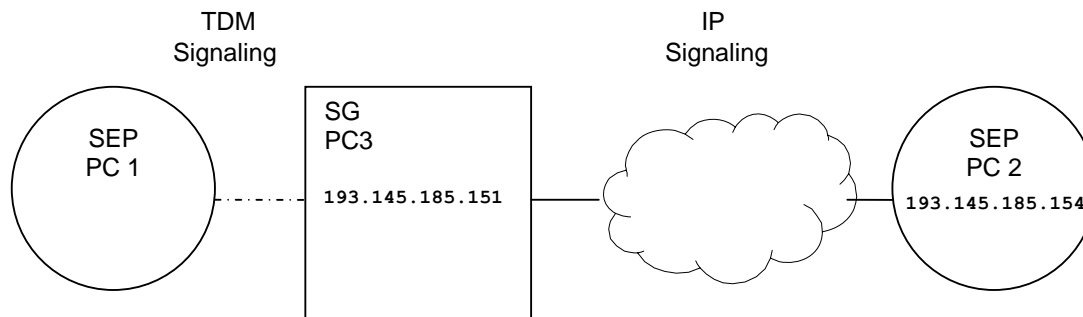


Figure 7 shows an example of a Signaling Gateway connected to a SEP on the TDM side and a SEP on the IP side.

Example MML for the SIGTRAN M2PA part of the above configuration is:

```
SNSLI:SNLINK=1,SNTP=2PA,END=C,IPADDR=194.192.185.11,
HPORT=3565,PPORT=3565,LABEL=SEP2-1;
SNSLI:SNLINK=2,SNTP=2PA,END=C,IPADDR=194.192.185.11,
HPORT=3566,PPORT=3566,LABEL=SEP2-2;
C7LSI:LS=2,OPC=3,DPC=2,LSSIZE=2,SS7MD=ITU14,NC=1,NI=2;
C7SLI:C7LINK=3,SNLINK=1,LS=2,SLC=0;
C7SLI:C7LINK=4,SNLINK=2,LS=2,SLC=1;
C7RTI:C7RT=2,NC=1,DPC=2,LS1=2;
```

7.2.4 M3UA Configuration

The Signaling Gateway employs M3UA to “backhaul” SS7 information to an SS7 resident application. The Signaling Gateway uses the Stream Control Transmission Protocol (SCTP) to provide a reliable transport protocol operating on top of IP. The relationship between the SCTP node on the Signaling Gateway and a peer node is known as an “association”. The Signaling Gateway employs the M3UA protocol to support the transport of any SS7 MTP3 user signaling (for example, ISUP and SCCP messages) over IP using the services of SCTP.

In backhaul operation, the Signaling Gateway communicates over an SCTP association using M3UA to an Application Server Process (ASP). An ASP is a host computer serving as an active or backup process of an Application Server (for example, part of a distributed virtual switch or database). Examples of ASPs are processes (or process instances) of MGCs, IP SCPs or HLRs. An ASP is an SCTP endpoint and may be configured to process signaling traffic within more than one Application Server.

A SIGTRAN link (**SNLINK**) identifies both the SCTP Association and the peer ASP that uses the Association.

The user can configure the Peer IP addresses (**IPADDR**, and optionally **IPADDR2**, a second IP address for resilience), a host port (**HPORT**) and a peer port (**PSPORT**). The user can also configure the SIGTRAN link to act as an IP client or IP server (**END**), the network the SIGTRAN link exists in (**NC**) and the Point Code format that the SIGTRAN link uses (**SS7MD**). SIGTRAN links are managed using the SNLx commands.

A Remote Application Server (RAS) is the logical entity serving a specific “routing key”. An example of an Application Server is a virtual switch element handling all call processing for a unique range of PSTN trunks, identified by an SS7 **DPC/OPC/CIC** range. Another example is a virtual database element, handling all HLR transactions for a particular SS7 **DPC/OPC/SCCP SSN** combination.

The Application Server contains a set of one or more unique SNLINKs of which one or more is normally actively processing traffic. There is a 1:1 relationship between an Application Server and a specific “routing key”. The user can configure an Application Server’s Destination Point Code (**DPC**) of the routing key as well as the Routing Context (**RC**) that uniquely identifies the routing key to the peer host application across the SIGTRAN link.

Application Servers are managed using the SNRAX commands and are associated to SIGTRAN links using the SNALx commands.

Figure 8. M3UA Backhaul Example

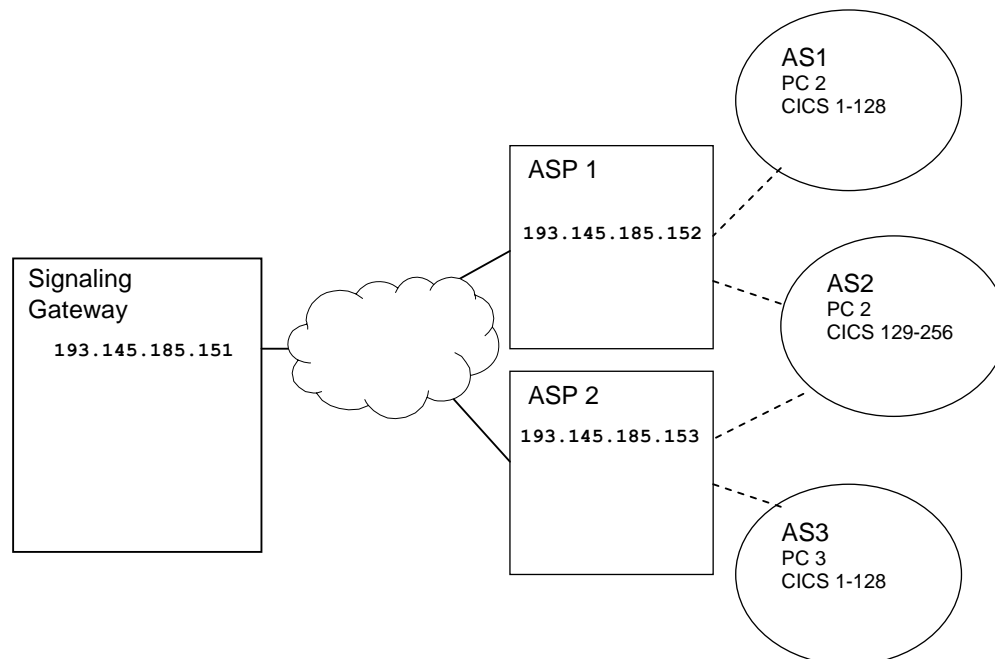


Figure 8 demonstrates a Signaling Gateway communicating over SIGTRAN links with two ASPs. ASP 1 is running two AS instances, AS1 processes CICs 1 to 128 in PC 2, and AS2 processes CICs 129 to 256 also in PC 2. ASP 2 is also running two AS instances, AS3 processes CICs 1 to 128 in PC 3 and AS2 processes CICs 129 to 256 also in PC 2. Note that AS2 is running on ASP1 and ASP2. The two ASPs could be load sharing processing for the AS or one could be active, while the other standby. The configuration of load sharing is performed by the ASPs. Example MML for the above configuration is:

```
Linkparatext: SNLINK=1, SNTYPE=SGM3UA, END=S, IPADDR=193.145.185.152,
              SS7MD=ITU14, NC=1, LABEL=ASP1;
Linkparatext: SNLINK=2, SNTYPE=SGM3UA, END=S, IPADDR=193.145.185.153,
              SS7MD=ITU14, NC=1, LABEL=ASP2;
Linkparatext: RAS=1, NC=1, DPC=2, RC=1, LABEL=AS1;
Linkparatext: RAS=2, NC=1, DPC=2, RC=2, LABEL=AS2;
Linkparatext: RAS=3, NC=1, DPC=3, RC=3, LABEL=AS3;
Linkparatext: RAS=1, SEQ=1, SNLINK=1;
Linkparatext: RAS=2, SEQ=1, SNLINK=1;
Linkparatext: RAS=2, SEQ=2, SNLINK=2;
Linkparatext: RAS=3, SEQ=1, SNLINK=2;
```

7.3 Routing Configuration

The routing model for the Signaling Gateway can be broken into three parts; incoming route selection, routing key processing and destination selection.

An Incoming Route (IR) identifies the side from which signaling data originates. MTP messages are considered to arrive from either the MTP domain over an SS7 link set (LS) using MTP2 or M2PA SS7 links (C7LINK) or the SIGTRAN IP domain over a M3UA SIGTRAN link (SNLINK). The SS7 link set or M3UA SIGTRAN link identifies the network (NC) and SS7 format (SS7MD) of the message. The IR configuration either explicitly identifies a destination or a routing key table (RKTAB) that is used to identify a destination (DEST). Incoming routes are managed using the SGIRx commands.

If the Signaling Gateway determines that a Routing Key Table (RKTAB) should be looked up, data from the message is compared with routing keys components (such as NC, SI, NI, OPC, DPC, CICs) in a routing key table. If a match is found and the Destination Point (DEST) for that routing key combination is in service, the routing key's Destination Point is used otherwise if the incoming route also had a Destination Point associated with it, then that default destination is used. Routing keys are managed using the SGRKx commands.

A Destination Point (DEST) can route a message to a Remote Application Server (RAS) or to MTP (using MTP2 or M2PA SS7 links) for routing based on Point Code. MTP routing can be selected by specifying an RTPRI of MTP. RAS routing can be selected by specifying an RTPRI of NONE and identifying the RAS that the messages should be routed to. Destinations are managed using the SGDPx commands.

Note: In many configurations, routing key analysis is not required and the user can configure an Incoming Route to go directly to a Destination without having to explicitly provide routing key information, such as Destination Point Codes, for every eventual destination.

Figure 9. Routing Configuration Example

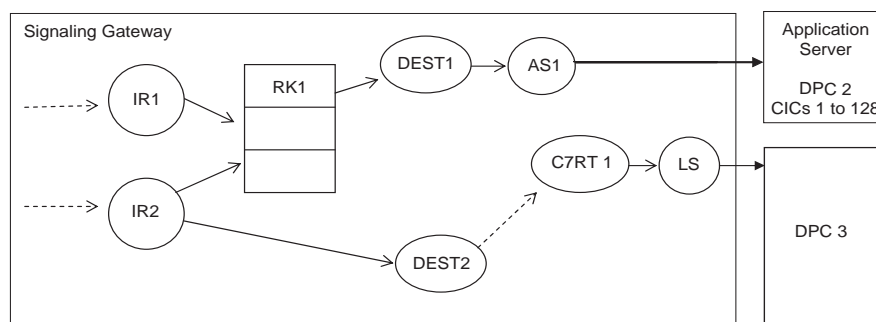


Figure 9 demonstrates example relationships between entities in the routing model. Relationships with full lines indicate that there is an explicit relationship between the entities (that is, one entity selects the other). Relationships with dotted lines indicate that the relationship is implicit, for example, if data arrives on a SIGTRAN link over M3UA, it is implicitly coming from the SIGTRAN IP domain and similarly if data arrives on an SS7 link set, it is implicitly arriving from the MTP domain.

Note: A message arriving from M2PA is considered as arriving from the MTP domain.

This example identifies two incoming routes, IR 1 from SIGTRAN IP and IR 2 from the MTP side. IR 1 and IR 2 go to the Routing Key Table 1 for routing key analysis. If the analysis fails, or the destination found by the analysis (Application Server AS1) is out of service, the Signaling Gateway discards messages from IR 1. The Signaling Gateway however attempts to route messages from IR 2 to Destination 2 only discards those messages if the SS7 route C7RT 1 is also out of service.

This example identifies two incoming routes, IR 1 from SIGTRAN IP and IR 2 from the MTP side. IR 1 goes to Routing Key Table 1 for routing key analysis. IR 2 also goes to Routing Key Table 1 for analysis, however, if analysis fails, or the destination found by analysis (either a MTP or SIGTRAN IP route or Application Server) is out of service, it attempts to route to Destination 2.

The routing key table has one entry as follows:

- The entry that routes all SS7 messages with DPC 2 and CICs 1 to 128 to Destination 1.

There are two Destinations:

- Destination 1 routes to Application Server 1.
- Destination 2 routes all messages to the MTP side.

Example MML for the routing part of the above configuration is as follows:

Note: The Destinations Point are configured first, followed by the Routing Key Tables, and then finally the Incoming Routes.

```
SGDPI:DEST=1,RTPRI=NONE,RAS=1;
SGDPI:DEST=2,RTPRI=MTP;
SGRKI:RKI=1,RKTAB=1,DPC=2,BCIC=1,RANGE=128,NC=1,DEST=1;
SGIRI:IR=1,NC=1,DOMAIN=IP,RKTAB=1;
SGIRI:IR=2,NC=1,DOMAIN=MTP,RKTAB=1,DEST=2;
```

7.4 Management and Operations

Entities such as boards, SS7 links, SIGTRAN links and Application Servers after configuration are considered to be in the “blocked” state. The configuration exists in the system for these entities, but these entities are not considered to be active. To activate an entity, the **MNBLE** command should be used. To temporally deactivate an entity, the **MNBLE** command should be used.

The status of entities such as boards, SS7 links, SIGTRAN links and Application Servers can be examined using the STxxx set of commands.

Alarms that occur on the Signaling Gateway can be view using the **ALLOP** and **ALLIP** commands.

7.5 Default Routing

The Signaling Gateway offers a Default Routing service. This service allows the Signaling Gateway to onward route MTP Message Signal Units (MSUs) with unknown Destination Point Codes (DPCs). It also provides a mechanism for Signaling Network Management messages to be generated for unknown Point Codes.

Figure 10 shows a typical system that uses Default Routing. The SPCs with Point Codes 1, 2 and 3 can each communicate with many Point Codes within the MTP Network not all of which the Dialogic® DSI Signaling Server has been configured to know about. The Signaling Server connects to two STPs that have been explicitly configured to know about more Point Codes than the Signaling Server.

7.5.1 Configuring Default Routing

Default Routing is configured using the **C7RTI** command with the **DPC** parameter set to "DFLT". An additional route is configured with the **LS1** and **LS2** parameters identifying the link sets to the STPs and the PC set to DFLT.

Routing MSUs

When the Default Route is configured, on receipt of an MSU for an unknown **DPC**, the message is sent out on an available link set in the Default Route or discarded.

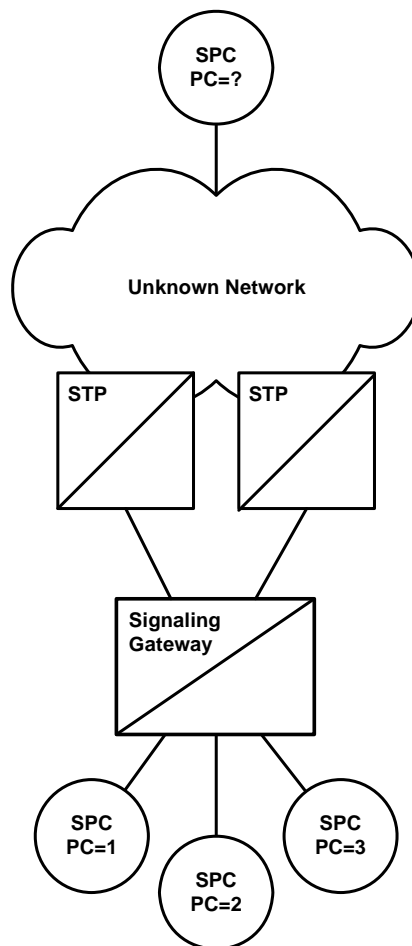
Route Set Test

SEPs send the Signaling Gateway RST messages for unknown Point Codes. The Signaling Server regenerates these messages and sends them to the STPs that responds to the Signaling Gateway with appropriate SNM messages.

Transfer Prohibited/Transfer Allowed

On receipt of TFA or TFP from one of the STPs in the Default Route, the Signaling Gateway regenerates and broadcasts these to all SEPs not in the Default Route.

Figure 10. System Using Default Routing



7.6 Resilience

7.6.1 IP Port Bonding

The Signaling Gateway allows the user to configure a resilient IP connection across an IP port bonding team of two ports in an active/standby configuration. On the Dialogic® DSI SS7G21, SS7G22 and SS7G31 Signaling Servers, up to two port bonding teams may be created using the four Ethernet ports on the SGW. The Dialogic® DSI SS7G32 Signaling Server has 6 Ethernet ports, allowing up to three port bonding teams. Each team has a single IP address configured with a primary (active) and secondary (standby) port. Any IP port on the system may be the primary port in a team and any port may be the secondary port. The primary port is a port configured with the IP address of the team and the secondary port is a port configured with a string to associate it with the primary port.

If the system detects that the Primary port has failed, it passes the primary's MAC and Layer 3 address to the failover (secondary) adapter, enabling it to act as the active port in the team. On the restoration of the primary port, the secondary port is removed from service and the primary port resumes control of its MAC and IP addresses.

The subnet mask of a secondary IP address in a team is ignored. Data loss may occur between the actual failure of an IP connect and the detection of that failure and subsequent switching to the standby port. All adapters in a team should be connected to the same hub or switch with Spanning Tree (STP) set to **off**.

Whenever teaming is activated, or deactivated, MMI sessions using those ports are reset. An IP address may not be teamed with:

- itself
- an IP address of 0.0.0.0
- another IP address already acting as a primary or standby in an IP team

Once configured the status of Ethernet ports in a bonded team may be checked using the **STEPP** command (see [Section 6.14.7](#) on [page 127](#)).

7.6.2 Dual Resilient Operation

Two Signaling Gateways have the ability to work in conjunction with one another to realize a single SS7 signaling point where the operation of the Message Transfer Part (MTP) is distributed. Failure (or planned maintenance) of one or other of the Signaling Gateways operating in "Dual Mode" therefore does not result in a loss of SS7 signaling capability.

The use of the dual functionality does introduce some restrictions that are described below. The user is responsible for ensuring that these restrictions are acceptable, otherwise the dual mode of operation may not be applicable.

7.6.2.1 Overview of Dual Resilience

The dual Signaling Gateway solution assumes that each Signaling Gateway has one (or more) signaling links facing the network.

The ability for each of the Signaling Gateways to communicate with each other is addressed by adding an additional link set (containing one or two links, for example LS2 in [Figure 11, "Dual Resilient Operation" on page 145](#)) between the two platforms. This link set is used to convey network status and management messages between the two halves of the system and to pass signaling traffic as necessary.

On each Signaling Gateway, there is (a minimum of) two link sets, one connected to the adjacent signaling point and the other connected to the other half of the dual pair. Each MTP route is configured so that the primary link set is the link set connected to the adjacent signaling point and the secondary link set is the link set connected to the partner Signaling Gateway. Load sharing across these link sets is disabled.

The link set between the two halves of the dual Signaling Gateway is configured so that the originating and destination point codes are identical.

Under normal circumstances, messages that have been determined for the SS7 network are routed directly over the link set that connects to the adjacent signaling point. Under failure conditions, when the link to the adjacent signaling point is not available, the traffic messages are sent instead on the secondary link set to the partner Signaling Gateway. On receipt of these messages, the partner Signaling Gateway recognizes that the message is not destined for itself and transfers the message to its network-facing link set.

The signaling that takes place between each half of the dual Signaling Gateway system makes use of two reserved Network Indicator values in the Sub-Service Field, these values designated “National - Reserved” and “International - Reserved” must therefore not be used for signaling either to or from the network.

The link set between the two halves of the dual pair now becomes a key element in the system, and to avoid a single point of failure, this link set should contain at least two signaling links. Where possible, these links should be located on different signaling boards.

7.6.2.2 Configuration

Each half of the dual configuration needs to be configured separately using existing configuration techniques and noting the following.

The additional link set between the two Signaling Gateways should have the local point code and the adjacent point code set to the same value.

Each route to a destination signaling point should be configured to use the network link set as the primary link set and the inter Signaling Gateway link set as the secondary link set. Load sharing must be disabled.

When connecting to a pair of adjacent STPs, each STP must have a route declared on each Signaling Gateway and in all cases the inter-Signaling Gateway link set must be specified as the secondary link set.

A route must be configured to the other half of the dual Signaling Gateway system, this must use the inter-Signaling Gateway link set as the only link set.

In addition, the link set between the two halves of the dual Signaling Gateway system must be designated as a “special” link set. The method of achieving this depends on the equipment and configuration tools in use as follows:

Use the **C7LSI** command to initiate a link set with the same values for the **OPC** and **DPC** parameters and the value of the **DUAL** parameter set to zero.

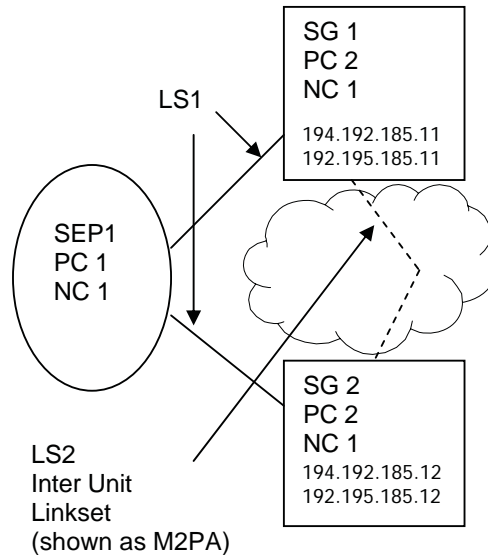
7.6.2.3 M2PA Inter Unit Signaling Links

The Signaling Gateway supports the use of M2PA SIGTRAN links for inter Signaling Gateway communication. M2PA SS7 links use the SCTP IP protocol to transmit signaling data. The use of IP links between the units (rather than TDM SS7 links) allows the systems to be able to present a greater number of TDM links and PCMs to face the SS7 network. In addition, since the Signaling Gateway supports two IP ports and M2PA supports IP multihoming, resilience between the units can be gained using redundant IP networks rather than the two SS7 boards that would be required to offer the same level of resilience.

7.6.2.4 Example

Figure 11 is an example of a DUAL resilient configuration using M2PA links for the resilient links between units.

Figure 11. Dual Resilient Operation



On Signaling Gateway 1, configure the IP addresses as follows and restart:

```
IPEPS:ETH=1, IPADDR=194.192.185.11;
IPEPS:ETH=2, IPADDR=192.192.185.11;
```

On Signaling Gateway 1, configure the link sets as follows:

```
C7LSI:LS=1, OPC=2, DPC=1, LSSIZE=2, SS7MD=ITU14, NI=2, NC=1;
C7LSI:LS=2, OPC=2, DPC=2, LSSIZE=2, SS7MD=ITU14, NI=2, NC=1;
```

On Signaling Gateway 1, configure the SIGTRAN link as follows:

```
SNSLI:SNLINK=1, SNTYPE=M2PA, IPADDR=194.192.185.12,
IPADDR2=192.195.185.12, END=C;
```

On Signaling Gateway 1, configure the signaling links as follows:

```
C7SLI:C7LINK=1, EQU=1-1, TS=1-1-1, LS=1, SLC=0;
C7SLI:C7LINK=2, SNLINK=1, LS=2, SLC=0;
```

On Signaling Gateway 1, configure the SS7 routes as follows:

```
C7RTI:C7RT=1, DPC=1, LS1=1, LS2=2, NC=1, LABEL=SEP1;
C7RTI:C7RT=2, LS1=2, DPC=2, NC=1, LABEL=INTERLINK;
```

On Signaling Gateway 2, configure the IP addresses as follows and restart:

```
IPEPS:ETH=1, IPADDR=194.192.185.12;
IPEPS:ETH=2, IPADDR=192.192.185.12;
```

On Signaling Gateway 2, configure the link sets as follows:

```
C7LSI:LS=1, OPC=2, DPC=1, LSSIZE=2, SS7MD=ITU14, NI=2, NC=1;
C7LSI:LS=2, OPC=2, DPC=2, LSSIZE=2, SS7MD=ITU14, NI=2, NC=1;
```

On Signaling Gateway 2, configure the SIGTRAN link as follows:

```
SNSLI:SNLINK=1, SNTYPE=M2PA, IPADDR=194.192.185.11,
IPADDR2=192.195.185.11, END=C;
```

On Signaling Gateway 2, configure the signaling links as follows:

```
C7SLI:C7LINK=1,EQU=1-1,TS=1-1-1,LS=1,SLC=1;  
C7SLI:C7LINK=2,SNLINK=1,LS=2,SLC=0;
```

On Signaling Gateway 2, configure the SS7 routes as follows:

```
C7RTI:C7RT=1,DPC=1,LS1=1,LS2=2,NC=1,LABEL=SEP1;  
C7RTI:C7RT=2,LS1=2,DPC=2,NC=1,LABEL=INTERLINK;
```

Linkset 1 is configured for both Signaling Gateways and has a destination point code of the SS7 switch.

Linkset 2 is a special linkset that has the same [OPC](#) and [DPC](#). It is used to route messages destined for CICs on the partner Signaling Gateway.

C7 route 1 is used to route calls from the Signaling Gateways to the SS7 switch, if [LS1](#) is not available, the signaling is routed via the partner Signaling Gateway using [LS2](#). This is the C7 route assigned to circuit groups.

7.6.3 Multihoming

An inherent property of the SCTP layer on the Signaling Gateway that is used in SIGTRAN Signaling (for example, SS7 over M2PA) is that it supports IP multihoming. IP multihoming allows the SIGTRAN signaling link SCTP association to be configured to communicate with multiple IP addresses in an active/standby relationship. Multihoming offers a SIGTRAN signaling link significantly greater resilience since the link can be configured with multiple IP addresses to operate over separate Ethernet ports within wholly separate IP networks. IP ports and local IP addresses on the Signaling Gateway may be configured using the [IPEPS](#) command (see page [86](#)). SIGTRAN links may be configured to communicate with multiple remote IP addresses using the [SNSLI](#) command (see page [119](#)).

7.7 Hard Disk Management

7.7.1 SS7G21 and SS7G22 Hard Disk Drives

Backup and restoration of the SS7G2x environment can be used in conjunction with the spare hard drive to restore a system to full operation in the event of hard disk failure. A backup may also be useful to take a snapshot of a known working system prior to significant change, or for diagnostics purposes providing files to the support channel for further investigation in the event of problems occurring on their system.

For more information about backing up SS7G2x hard drives, see [Section 4.14, "Creating a System Archive" on page 35](#).

Note: The SS7G2x spare hard disk, SS7G20SHDD, is an orderable product containing the operating system for the SS7G2x. The SS7G20SHDD is system neutral and requires a backed-up system license to bind it to a particular SS7G2x. The SS7G20SHDD will not function without a valid system license. If you want to take up the additional redundancy offered by a spare hard disk you must ensure that you have an archive of at least the system license prior to any potential failure of a hard disk.

7.7.2 SS7G31 and SS7G32 Hard Disk Drive RAID Array

The SS7G31 and SS7G32 systems are equipped with 2 mirrored hard disk drives configured in RAID 1 array (Redundant Array of Independent Disks). These disks will remain synchronized, ensuring that an up-to-date copy of all data on the disk drives (such as the operating system software, Dialogic® DSI signaling software, system licenses and configuration files) will be maintained on both disks. In the event of failure of a single drive, the Signaling Server will continue to support all the capabilities of the Signaling Server. When the failed disk drive is replaced with a unformatted disk drive, following the procedure below, the Signaling Server will mirror the operating software and data onto the new drive.

In the event of hard disk failure, the system will alarm, identifying the disk as unavailable. On the SS7G31 systems, the disk drive must be deactivated using the [MNINI](#) command (see [Section 6.9.3 on page 94](#)) before the unit is shut down, and the hard drive removed and replaced. For the SS7G32 the disk drive must be deactivated but the unit does not require to be shut down.

Refer to hard disk drive removal instructions in the *Dialogic® DSI SS7G31 and SS7G32 Signaling Servers Hardware Manual*. Once the disk has been replaced and, in the case of the SS7G31, the system restarted the replacement drive should be activated using the **MNINE** command (see [Section 6.9.4 on page 94](#)), at which time the system will perform a synchronization function copying all software to the newly installed disk drive. The 'disk unavailable' alarm will persist until both disk drives are synchronized. The disk unavailable alarm will persist even if a failed disk drive is removed and not replaced.

Spare hard disk drives for the SS7G31 and SS7G32 system are available as an orderable part. Refer to the *Dialogic® DSI SS7G31 and SS7G32 Signaling Servers Product Data Sheet* (navigate from http://www.dialogic.com/products/signalingip_ss7components/signaling_servers_and_gateways.htm) for part number information.

Important: Although the RAID management software has been designed to be robust it is important to follow the removal and replacement procedures described above in order to ensure RAID array hard disk drive integrity.

Warning: USB storage devices should not be connected to the Signaling Server during hard disk drive removal and replacement. Verify that all attached USB storage devices are removed before performing HDD removal, replacement and re-activation.

Disk drive replacement should be performed during a scheduled maintenance period and, for the SS7G32, which supports hot swap, during a period of light traffic. re-synchronization of disk drives subsequent to replacement can take between 5-10 minutes, depending on the conditions and load under which the Signaling Server is operating. The Signaling Server should not be restarted during this period and MMI activity should be limited to checking the status of the re-synchronization. The status of the disk drives can be identified using the **STDDP** command (see [Section 6.14.6 on page 126](#)). A status of UP indicates that a drive is fully operational, a status of DOWN indicates either that the disk is faulty or otherwise unable to Synchronize. A status INACTIVE indicates that it has been deactivated by the user, a status of RESTARTING indicates that it is attempting to synchronize but the operation is not yet complete.

If the server is restarted through power loss or user action while synchronization is in progress the synchronizing disk will be in an indeterminate state and on restart may cause the server to fail to boot. In such an event the disk should be removed from the server and any formatting on the disk manually removed. The disk should be re-installed on the server and the system booted. To restart synchronization the user should deactivate (**MNINI**) and the re-active (**MNINE**) the disk. On the SS7G32 the disk does not need to be re-formatted instead the user should simply boot without the disk, insert it when the system is operational and re-activate synchronization using **MNINI/MNINE**.

If a disk drive remains in the 'DOWN' state after attempting re-activation, either the replacement drive is faulty or it has previously been formatted (RAID will only function with unformatted drives). In the case of the SS7G32, RAID mirroring may also fail and the disk remain 'DOWN' due to the action of the hot-swap. If this occurs the Server should be restarted and synchronization re-activated using **MNINI/MNINE**.

Chapter 8: Alarm Fault Code Listing

A system operator can obtain a listing of the current alarm status (class, category and ID) of a Dialogic® DSI Signaling Server using the **ALLIP** management terminal command described in [Section 6.4.4, "ALLIP" on page 51](#) or a log of current and cleared alarms using the **ALLOP** management terminal command described in [Section 6.4.5, "ALLOP" on page 52](#). [Table 10](#) details the possible alarm types accessed by the **ALLIP** command. Alarm status/events may also be accessed/reported by front panel LEDs, relay connections and SNMP, as described in [Section 1.9.6, "Alarm Log" on page 14](#).

Note: The meaning of individual event codes (in particular, the coding of the DIAG field) may be changed in subsequent releases of the Signaling Gateway software without prior notification.

Table 10. Alarm Fault Codes

| Severity (LED) | CODE | Name | Event Description | CATEGORY | ID | Class † | DIAG |
|----------------|------|----------------|---|----------|------|---------|-----------------|
| Critical (CRT) | 11 | Link set fail | All signaling links in an SS7 signaling link set have failed. Usually due to incorrect configuration (Point Codes or signaling timeslots), connectivity fault or inactive signaling terminal at the remote end. | SIG | LS | 3 | 0 |
| Critical (CRT) | 12 | Board failure | The Signaling Gateway has detected a fault with a signaling processor. This may either be due to a faulty signaling processor board or due to the Signaling Gateway performing a controlled shutdown of a signaling processor following persistent overload of the processor in order to prevent the overload affecting the remainder of the system. Usually due to faulty board (which can be confirmed by changing SS7 links to an alternative processor board using the C7LSC command) or unusual signaling conditions which may be due to incorrect configuration or a mismatch of configuration between the Signaling Gateway and the remote end. This alarm condition can only be cleared by manual intervention, the user should block and unblock the affected board. Note that a Processor Fail entry always appears in the alarm log when a board is unblocked, this condition is identified by an event with identical Occurred and Cleared times. | SYS | BPOS | 3 | 0 |
| Critical (CRT) | 14 | Self Test fail | The Signaling Gateway has detected a self test failure which prevents normal operation. | SYS | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| Critical (CRT) | 18 | Alarm Test 3 | This event indicates that the user has invoked the alarm test for alarm class 3 using the ALTEI command. | SYS | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| Critical (CRT) | 32 | Overload | The Signaling Gateway has detected the onset of an internal overload condition. This is usually due either to exceptionally high traffic rates or failure conditions causing additional invocation of maintenance procedures. During overload the Signaling Gateway will continue to operate as normal. Should the condition occur on a frequent basis (for example, during the busy hour every day) the condition should be reported to your support representative. | SYS | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| Critical (CRT) | 41 | All RDC fail | Failure of communication with all remote data centers. Continuous records are written to hard disk or discarded as appropriate. Periodic report data is discarded. | SYS | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| Critical (CRT) | 46 | Hard disk fail | Interaction with the hard disk is no longer possible. No further use of the hard disk is attempted until the system is restarted. The most likely cause is a physical failure of the hard disk drive. | SYS | 0 | 3 | Diagnostic code |

† The "Class" column provides the initial default setting of the alarm class for each fault code. The alarm class for any particular alarm code is configurable using the **ALCLS** command and can be viewed using the **ALCLP** command. Changing the alarm class for an event type changes the Severity indicated by the LEDs and/or relays.

Table 10. Alarm Fault Codes (Continued)

| Severity (LED) | CODE | Name | Event Description | CATEGORY | ID | Class [†] | DIAG |
|----------------|------|-------------------------|--|----------|--------|--------------------|------|
| Critical (CRT) | 63 | PSU failure | The system has detected that one or more power supplies have failed. The system is able to operate with the loss of a single power supply but the power supply must be replaced at the earliest possible opportunity. | SYS | PSU ID | 3 | 0 |
| Critical (CRT) | 72 | Fan failure | The system has detected a failure of one or more of its cooling fans leading to an inadequate cooling supply. The faulty fan(s) should be replaced immediately. | SYS | 0 | 3 | 0 |
| Critical (CRT) | 76 | CPU warning | The system has detected that one or more of the CPUs is likely to fail. | SYS | | 3 | |
| Critical (CRT) | 77 | CPU failure | The system has detected that one or more of the CPUs has failed. | SYS | | 3 | |
| Critical (CRT) | 78 | Memory failure | The system has detected that one or more of its memory modules has failed. | SYS | | 3 | |
| Major (MJR) | 1 | PCM loss | Loss of signal at PCM input port | PCM | PCM | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 2 | AIS | PCM input port contains the Alarm Indication Signal (all ones on all timeslots) | PCM | PCM | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 3 | Frame sync loss | Loss of frame alignment on PCM port | PCM | PCM | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 4 | Frame slip | A frame slip occurred on the PCM port. This alarm event is given for each occurrence of a frame slip. | PCM | PCM | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 5 | Remote alarm | PCM port is receiving a Remote Alarm Indication. This usually indicates that the remote end is either failing to achieve frame alignment or that it is experiencing a high bit error rate on the received signal. | PCM | PCM | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 6 | BER > 1:10 ⁵ | The input PCM signal contains a Bit Error Rate (BER) in excess of 1 in 100,000 as measured on the frame alignment pattern. This is usually due to faulty cabling or a faulty PCM board at the remote end. | PCM | PCM | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 7 | BER > 1:10 ³ | The input PCM signal contains a Bit Error Rate (BER) in excess of 1 in 1000 as measured on the frame alignment pattern. This is usually due to faulty cabling or a faulty PCM board at the remote end. | PCM | PCM | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 9 | C7 link fail | An SS7 signaling link has failed. Usually due to incorrect configuration (signaling timeslot), connectivity fault or inactive signaling terminal at the remote end. | SIG | C7LINK | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 15 | Fan warning | The system has detected either the failure of one of the cooling fans or that a fan is likely to fail. The cooling will remain adequate during this condition but the fan should be replaced at the next convenient opportunity. | SYS | 0 | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 17 | Alarm Test 2 | This event indicates that the user has invoked the alarm test for alarm class 2 using the ALTEI command. | SYS | 0 | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 20 | Temperature | The internal temperature is outside a preset threshold indicating either an internal fault or failure of the cooling arrangements. Inspection should take place immediately. | SYS | CPU ID | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 33 | Sync failure | None of the PCM ports that have been configured as possible clock sources contain a valid PCM signal. Under these conditions the Signaling Gateway will generate synchronisation using a local oscillator. | PCM | 0 | 4 | 0 |

[†] The "Class" column provides the initial default setting of the alarm class for each fault code. The alarm class for any particular alarm code is configurable using the [ALCLS](#) command and can be viewed using the [ALCLP](#) command. Changing the alarm class for an event type changes the Severity indicated by the LEDs and/or relays.

Table 10. Alarm Fault Codes (Continued)

| Severity (LED) | CODE | Name | Event Description | CATEGORY | ID | Class [†] | DIAG |
|----------------|------|--------------------|---|----------|--------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Major (MJR) | 35 | PCM error ind | Diagnostic event relating to the PCM functionality. Persistent events of this type should be reported to your support representative. | NONE | | 4 | |
| Major (MJR) | 36 | PCM event ind | Diagnostic information relating to PCMs. | NONE | | 4 | |
| Major (MJR) | 39 | System restart req | The user has changed configuration parameters that require the system to be restarted before they can take effect. The alarm will persist until the system is restarted. | SYS | 0 | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 40 | RDC failure | Failure of communication with a remote data center. Usually due to incorrect configuration (IP address, username or password), connectivity fault or inactive equipment at the remote end. | SIG | RDC | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 42 | RDC err ind | Diagnostic event relating to the transfer of data to an RDC. Persistent events of this type should be reported to your support representative. | NONE | | 4 | |
| Major (MJR) | 44 | CR send fail | The Signaling Gateway is unable to transfer information to an RDC for a Continuous Record. Possible problems include: no RDCs available, directory does not exist on RDC for this CR, write failure on RDC. If the problem clears, this alarm will persist until any records saved on the hard disk during the failure have been successfully transferred to an RDC. | NONE | RECORD | 4 | Diagnostic code |
| Major (MJR) | 45 | PR send fail | The Signaling Gateway is unable to transfer information to an RDC for a Periodic Report. Possible problems include: no RDCs available, directory does not exist on RDC for this PR, write failure on RDC. If the problem clears, then the alarm will clear at the next successful transfer of data for the Periodic Report. | NONE | REPORT | 4 | Diagnostic code |
| Major (MJR) | 47 | Hard disk full | The hard disk drive capacity for a Continuous Record has reached its limit. Either there is no more space on the hard disk drive to store data, or this continuous record has the maximum amount of data stored for it on the hard drive. In both cases, records is discarded until an RDC recovers and all stored records are transferred from the Signaling Gateway. The alarm will then clear. | | RECORD | 4 | |
| Major (MJR) | 50 | Board cong | A board has reached a congestion threshold. Boards repeatedly entering congestion indicate a need to increase the dimensioning of the switch. | SYS | BPOS | 4 | |
| Major (MJR) | 53 | PCM mismatch | The PCMTYPE setting is inconsistent with the hardware settings on the board. | SYS | PCM | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 61 | Software mismatch | The system has only partially been upgraded and a full software update is required. The system is running in 'safe' mode running limited management software. No circuits have been brought into service. | SYS | 0 | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 62 | C7 link Cong | A SS7 signaling link is encountering congestion. | SIG | C7LINK | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 64 | Power warning | The system has detected that the voltage on one or more power rails is out of range. This is usually due to either a faulty power supply module or a faulty board causing excessive current consumption. | SYS | 0 | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 65 | Assoc fail | A SIGTRAN signaling link has failed. Usually due to incorrect configuration (connectivity fault or inactive signaling at the remote end. | SIG | SNLINK | 4 | 0 |

[†] The "Class" column provides the initial default setting of the alarm class for each fault code. The alarm class for any particular alarm code is configurable using the [ALCLS](#) command and can be viewed using the [ALCLP](#) command. Changing the alarm class for an event type changes the Severity indicated by the LEDs and/or relays.

Table 10. Alarm Fault Codes (Continued)

| Severity (LED) | CODE | Name | Event Description | CATEGORY | ID | Class [†] | DIAG |
|--|------|-------------------------|---|----------|----------|--------------------|------|
| Major (MJR) | 66 | NIF event ind | Diagnostic event relating to the Nodal Interworking Function. Persistent events of this type should be reported to your support representative. | NONE | | 4 | |
| Major (MJR) | 67 | NIF err ind | Diagnostic event relating to the Network Interface Function. Persistent events of this type should be reported to your support representative. | NONE | | 4 | |
| Major (MJR) | 68 | SNRT unavail | Reserved | SIG | NC | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 69 | C7RT unavail | One or more SS7 routes are unavailable | SIG | NC | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 70 | RAS unavail | One or more SIGTRAN Application Servers are unavailable | SIG | NC | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 71 | RAS under res | One or more SIGTRAN Application Servers are available but have insufficient number of ASP (load sharing mode only) | SIG | NC | 4 | 0 |
| Major (MJR) | 73 | M2PA event ind | Diagnostic event relating to the M2PA protocol layer. Persistent events of this type should be reported to your support representative. | NONE | | 4 | |
| Major (MJR) | 74 | M2PA err ind | Diagnostic event relating to the M2PA protocol layer. Persistent events of this type should be reported to your support representative. | NONE | | 4 | |
| Major (MJR) | 81 | Hard Disk Drive Failure | A RAID 1 hard disk drive is unavailable or out of synchronisation with the other disk of the RAID array | SYS | drive ID | | |
| Minor (MRN) | 16 | Alarm Test 1 | This event indicates that the user has invoked the alarm test for alarm class 1 using the ALTEI command. | SYS | 0 | 5 | 0 |
| Minor (MRN) | 19 | System Restart | This event indicates the time at which a system restart occurred. | SYS | 0 | 5 | 0 |
| Minor (MRN) | 34 | New sync source | The Signaling Gateway has selected a new PCM as the clock synchronization source. | PCM | PCM | 5 | |
| Minor (MRN) | 79 | Default alarm | The system has detected a low priority low level alarm condition. The user should contact their support contact for further information. | SYS | | 5 | |
| [†] The "Class" column provides the initial default setting of the alarm class for each fault code. The alarm class for any particular alarm code is configurable using the ALCLS command and can be viewed using the ALCLP command. Changing the alarm class for an event type changes the Severity indicated by the LEDs and/or relays. | | | | | | | |

Chapter 9: Remote Data Center Operation

The Remote Data Center (RDC) service allows the transfer of data between the Dialogic® DSI Signaling Gateway and a remote computer located at a remote management center. Data is transferred over a local or wide area network using the ftp protocol.

Up to four different RDCs can be configured and each report can be configured to use two RDC's (one as the primary RDC and the other as the backup RDC). This provides continuity of service in case the connection to the primary RDC fails.

The RDC uses the ftp file transfer mechanism to exchange data with the remote site. The remote site requires only an industry standard ftp server to handle the file transfer and does not require any proprietary software on the remote computer. The Signaling Gateway "logs on" to the remote computer using a user-configured user name and password.

Two categories of report are made to the RDC, Continuous Records and Periodic Reports. In each case, there are several report types as detailed below.

The data transferred for each report type is stored in a different directory on the remote system using a new file for each day's information. The directory name is user configurable.

9.1 Local Data Centers

As the Signaling Gateway can act as an ftp server, the Signaling Gateway itself can act as a "Remote Data Center" locally storing files and providing RDC services. Configuration in the manner is particularly useful as a backup when loss of communication with normal RDCs occur.

When the unit is configured to store continuous records and periodic reports locally, the user is responsible for the management of the file space used on the Signaling Gateway. If the file system becomes full, the Signaling Gateway is no longer able to back up files locally. A full file system has no other impact on the operation of the Signaling Gateway and the user is able to correct the problem by removing files from within the "siuftp" account.

9.2 Continuous Records

Continuous records provide the capability to transfer records to an RDC on a continuous basis in near real time. The minimum number of records collected prior to transfer and the maximum time interval before the transfer is attempted are configured by the user. This allows the user complete control over when records are transferred to the remote data center, within system limits.

Continuous recording can be configured to support the occurrence and clearing of alarms to an RDC. The records are formatted as a comma separated variable (CSV) text file.

9.3 Periodic Reporting

Periodic reports can be configured to support the transfer to an RDC of data at user-defined intervals, typically allowing, for example, hourly reports of traffic measurements on a per SS7 link basis. The reports are formatted as a CSV file.

9.3.1 C7 Link Traffic Measurements

Measurements collected on a per CCS SS7 signaling basis can be transferred periodically to the RDC. These measurements can optionally be reset at the expiry of each interval.

9.3.2 PCM Traffic Measurements

Measurements collected on a per PCM basis can be transferred periodically to the RDC. These measurements can optionally be reset at the expiry of each interval.

9.3.3 SIGTRAN Link Traffic Measurements

Measurements collected on a per SIGTRAN link basis can be transferred periodically to the RDC. These measurements can optionally be reset at the expiry of each interval.

9.3.4 Ethernet Port Traffic Measurements

Measurements collected on performance data associated with Ethernet ports can be transferred periodically to the RDC. These measurements can optionally be reset at the expiry of each interval.

9.3.5 System Measurements

Measurements collected on system performance data can be transferred periodically to the RDC. These measurements can optionally be reset at the expiry of each interval.

9.4 RDC File Formats

This section specifies the file formats for records that are sent from the Signaling Gateway to a Remote Data Center (RDC). As shown in the examples, the records are provided in CSV (Comma Separated Variable) text file format.

9.4.1 Alarm Record File Format

```
10,11,1,0,3,A,2001-01-01,00:00:35,,,Linkset fail
11,9,1,0,2,A, 2001-01-01,00:00:35,,,C7 link fail
2,44,1,3,2,C, 2001-01-01,00:00:28, 2001-01-01,00:00:36,CR send fail
11,9,1,0,2,C, 2001-01-01,00:00:35, 2001-01-01,00:00:36,C7 link fail
10,11,1,0,3,C, 2001-01-01,00:00:35, 2001-01-01,00:00:36,Linkset fail
```

| Field | Title | Example | Range | Description |
|-------|---------------|--------------|--------------------------|---|
| 1 | ALP | 10 | 1 to 9999 | Sequence reference number of an entry in the alarm log |
| 2 | CODE | 11 | 1 to 999 | Fault code of a system alarm |
| 3 | ID | 1 | 0 to 9999 | Identifier for alarm (usage depends on the alarm code) |
| 4 | DIAG | 0 | 0 to 9999 | Diagnostic of the alarm (usage depends on the alarm code) |
| 5 | CLA | 3 | 3,4,5 | Alarm class number |
| 6 | ACTIVE | C | A or C | Indication whether the alarm is Active or Cleared |
| 7 | DATE OCCURRED | 1970-01-01 | yyyy-mm-dd | Date the alarm occurred |
| 8 | TIME OCCURED | 00:00:35 | hh:mm:ss | Time the alarm occurred |
| 9 | DATE CLEARED | 1970-01-01 | yyyy-mm-dd | Date the alarm cleared |
| 10 | TIME CLEARED | 00:00:36 | hh:mm:ss | Time the alarm cleared |
| 11 | TITLE | Linkset fail | Up to 12 text characters | Title of the alarm |

9.4.2 Ethernet Port Measurements File Format

```
2005-11-16,14:40:01,1,265,2016,0,0,0,0,0,0,119,1136,0,0,0,0,0,0,2077
2005-11-16,14:40:01,4,4664602,3448084,0,0,0,0,0,0,1183455,1809415,0,0,0,0,0,0,2077
2005-11-16,14:45:01,1,301,2368,0,0,0,0,0,0,145,1379,0,0,0,0,0,0,2377
2005-11-16,14:45:01,4,10220775,7212808,0,0,0,0,0,0,1270164,3077831,0,0,0,0,0,0,2377
```

| Field | Field | Example | Range | Description |
|-------|---------|------------|-----------------|---|
| 1 | Date | 2005-11-16 | yyyy-mm-dd | Date when measurements collected |
| 2 | Time | 14:40:01 | hh:mm:ss | Time when measurements collected |
| 3 | ETH | 1 | 1 to 4 | Ethernet port number |
| 4 | RXKBYTE | 10220775 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of kilobytes of data received (in kilobytes) |
| 5 | RXPKT | 7212808 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of packets of data received |
| 6 | RXERR | 0 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of receive errors detected |
| 7 | RXDROP | 0 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of received packets dropped by the device driver |
| 8 | RXFIFO | 0 | 0 to 4294967295 | The number of FIFO buffer errors received |
| 9 | RXFRAME | 0 | 0 to 4294967295 | The number of packet framing errors received |
| 10 | RXCOMP | 0 | 0 to 4294967295 | The number of compressed packets received |
| 11 | RXMULT | 0 | 0 to 4294967295 | The number of multicast frames received |
| 12 | TXKBYTE | 1270164 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of kilobytes of data transmitted (in kilobytes) |
| 13 | TXPKT | 3077831 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of packets of data transmitted |

9.4.3 PCM Measurements File Format

```
2001-12-31,13:07:25,600,1-1,5,50,20,500
2001-01-01,01:01:00,86400,1-2,90,1000,1000,1000
2001-11-22,19:07:38,3600,2-1,1,0,0,0
```

| Field | Title | Example | Range | Description |
|-------|----------------------------------|------------|------------------------|---|
| 1 | Date | 2001-12-31 | yyyy-mm-dd | Date when measurements collected |
| 2 | Time | 13:07:25 | hh:mm:ss | Time when measurements collected |
| 3 | Period | 600 | 0:4294967295 | Duration of measurement period in seconds |
| 4 | PCM | 3-1 | x: 1 to 3 y: 1 to 4 | PCM: x-y board id – port id. |
| 5 | Frame Slip counter | 50 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of frame slips occurred. |
| 6 | Out of synchronism transitions | 1000 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of out-sync transitions. |
| 7 | Errored Seconds counter | 20 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of Errored Seconds occurred. |
| 8 | Severely Errored Seconds counter | 500 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of Severely Errored Seconds. |

9.4.4 SS7 Link Measurements File Format

```
2001-12-31,13:07:25,600,3,1000,56,513,502,20,6512,6502,10
2001-01-01,01:01:00,86400,2,5000,10,1000,1000,10,1000,1000,0
2001-11-22,19:07:38,3600,1,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
```

| Field | Title | Example | Range | Description |
|-------|----------------------|------------|-----------------|--|
| 1 | Date | 2001-12-31 | yyyy-mm-dd | Date when measurements collected |
| 2 | Time | 13:07:25 | hh:mm:ss | Time when measurements collected |
| 3 | Period | 600 | 0 to 4294967295 | Duration of measurement period in seconds |
| 4 | SS7 Link | 3 | 0 to 32 | SS7 Link Number. |
| 5 | In Service | 1000 | 0 to 4294967295 | Duration of the link IN-SERVICE state. |
| 6 | Negative ACK | 56 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of negative acknowledgement received. NOTE: Not applicable for M2PA SS7 links and is set to 0. See SIGTRAN Link measurements. |
| 7 | Octets Transmitted | 513 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of octets transmitted. |
| 8 | Octets Received | 502 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of octets received. |
| 9 | Octets Retransmitted | 20 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of octets retransmitted. NOTE: Not applicable for M2PA SS7 links and is set to 0. See SIGTRAN Link measurements. |
| 10 | MSU Transmitted | 6512 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of MSU transmitted. |
| 11 | MSU Received | 6502 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of MSU received. |
| 12 | Congestion Counter | 10 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of congestion events occurred. |

9.4.5 SIGTRAN Link Measurements File Format

```
2001-12-31,13:07:25,600,2,886,888,5,0,0
2001-01-01,01:01:00,86400,5,5000,6000,1000,1000,65
2001-11-22,19:07:38,3600,1,0,0,0,0,0
```

| Field | Title | Example | Range | Description |
|-------|---------------------------------|------------|-----------------|---|
| 1 | Date | 2001-12-31 | yyyy-mm-dd | Date when measurements collected |
| 2 | Time | 13:07:25 | hh:mm:ss | Time when measurements collected |
| 3 | Period | 600 | 0 to 4294967295 | Duration of measurement period in seconds |
| 4 | SIGTRAN Link | 2 | 0 to 32 | SIGTRAN Link Number. |
| 5 | Chunks Received | 886 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of chunks received in the link. |
| 6 | Chunks Transmitted | 888 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of chunks transmitted in the link. |
| 7 | Chunks Retransmitted | 5 | 0 to 4294967295 | Number of chunks retransmitted in the link. |
| 8 | Number of times out of service. | 0 | 0 to 4294967295 | Duration in abort and shutdown states. |
| 9 | Out of service duration. | 0 | 0 to 4294967295 | Duration of the link out of service since last reset. |

9.4.6 System Measurements File Format

```
2005-11-16,14:40:01,0,231,155,8462
2005-11-16,14:45:01,0,368,159,8762
2005-11-16,14:50:01,0,380,164,9062
```

| Field | Field | Example | Range | Description |
|-------|---------|-------------|-----------------|---|
| 1 | Date | 2005-11-16 | yyyy-mm-dd | Date when measurements collected |
| 2 | Time | 14:40:01 | hh:mm:ss | Time when measurements collected |
| 3 | NOVLD | 0 | 0 to 65535 | The number of periods of congestion (overload) during the measurement period |
| 4 | MAXLOAD | 380 (3.8%) | 0 to 10000 | Maximum load average measurement taken over 1 minute (based on the UNIX load average) multiplied by 100 |
| 5 | LOADAVG | 164 (1.64%) | 0 to 10000 | The average load on the system (based on the UNIX load average) measurement taken over the measurement period multiplied by 100 |
| 6 | PERIOD | 9062 | 0 to 4294967295 | Duration of measurement period in seconds |

9.5 RDC Configuration and Usage

This section provides a guide to the configuration of the Signaling Gateway for RDC operation, the text demonstrates by example, the man machine language (MML) commands and parameters required to invoke those services that transfer data to and from the RDC.

9.5.1 RDC Initialization

Initialize the RDC using the **CNRDI** command:

```
CNRDI:RDC=1,IPADDR=123.123.123.12,USER=ANONYMOUS,PASSWORD=ANONYMOUS,LABEL=MYWORKSTN;
```

Unblock the RDC using the **MNBLE** command:

```
MNBLE:RDC=1;
```

Check the status of the RDC with the **STRDP** command:

```
STRDP;
```

9.5.2 Continuous Records

Continuous records, once created, are automatically transferred to the hard drive of the RDC. The user can configure the transfer interval ranging from 30 seconds to 24 hours. A different directory should be specified for each record type.

A file is created on the RDC during the first transfer for each record type during any 24 hour period beginning at midnight. Filenames are unique, identifying the date of transfer in the form YYYYMMDD.

Alarm Data

As alarms are generated, they are stored in the alarm logs on the converter. A record of these alarms can also be transferred to an RDC.

The following examples describe how a continuous record of type ALARM is initialized:

```
RDCRI:RECORD=3,CRTYPE=ALARM,PERIOD=00:30:00,MINREC=100,RDC1=1,
LABEL=ALARMS;
```

The **RDCRI** command creates record number 3 that is of type ALARM. The contents of the record is transferred to the RDC when either the period or minrec, (minimum number of records), conditions are met.

RDC number 1 is the primary RDC; no secondary RDC has been identified. Records are transferred to the ALARMS directory on the RDC.

9.5.3 Periodic Reports

Periodic reports, once created, are periodically transferred to the RDC. The user can configure the transfer interval ranging from five minutes to 24 hours. Each report type should be collected in a different directory.

A file is created on the RDC during the first transfer for each report type during any 24 hour period beginning at midnight. Filenames are unique, identifying the date of transfer in the form YYYYMMDD.

Periodic report data can optionally be reset, (all values to zero), following each file transfer.

SS7 Signaling Link Traffic Measurements

Traffic measurement data can be generated for each SS7 signaling link.

The following examples describe how a periodic report is first created before SS7 Links ([C7LINK](#)) are selected as the collection points:

```
RDPRI:REPORT=1,PRTYPE=MSC7,PERIOD=01:00:00,RDC1=4,  
RESET=Y,LABEL=C7LINK;
```

The [RDPRI](#) command creates report number 1 that is of type MSC7. The contents of the report is transferred to the RDC once each period.

RDC number 4 is the primary RDC; no secondary RDC is identified in the example. Reports are transferred to the [C7LINK](#) directory on the RDC. Because the [RESET](#) parameter has been set to 'Y', data for each SS7 link associated with this report is reset following each file transfer.

Once the periodic report has been initialized, existing SS7 links can be dynamically associated with it using the [RDPDI](#) command or removed with the [RDPDE](#) command, for example:

```
RDPDI:REPORT=1,C7LINK=2&3;  
RDPDE:REPORT=1,C7LINK=3;
```

The [RDPDI](#) command identifies SS7 links 2 and 3 as collection points for report 1. The [RDPDE](#) command removes SS7 link 3 from the report.

PCM Traffic Measurements

Periodic reports conveying PCM performance data can be configured using the [RDPRI](#) command. PCMs are associated with the report using the [RDPDI](#) command. PCMs can be removed from the report using the [RDPDE](#) command.

The [PRTYPE](#) parameter should be **MSPCM**.

SIGTRAN Link Traffic Measurements

Periodic reports conveying SIGTRAN link performance data can be configured using the [RDPRI](#) command. SIGTRAN Links ([SNLINK](#)) are associated with the report using the [RDPDI](#) command. SIGTRAN Links can be removed from the report using the [RDPDE](#) command.

The [PRTYPE](#) parameter should be **MSSL**.

Ethernet Port Traffic Measurements

Periodic reports conveying Ethernet performance data can be configured using the [RDPRI](#) command. [ETH](#) ports are associated with the report using the [RDPDI](#) command. [ETH](#) ports can be removed from the report using the [RDPDE](#) command.

The [PRTYPE](#) parameter should be **MSEP**.

System Measurements

Periodic reports conveying system performance data can be configured using the [RDPRI](#) command. There are no associated data types for use with this command.

The [PRTYPE](#) parameter should be **MSSY**.

9.5.4 Software Update

See [Section 4.11.1, “Software Update from a Remote Data Center” on page 32](#) for example MML that upgrades the Signaling Gateway software from an RDC.

9.5.5 Configuration Backup

See [Section 4.12.1, “Configuration Backup to Remote Data Center” on page 33](#) for example MML that upgrades the Signaling Gateway configuration from an RDC.

9.5.6 Configuration Update

See [Section 4.13.1, “Configuration Update from a Remote Data Center” on page 33](#) for example MML that upgrades the Signaling Gateway configuration from an RDC.

9.5.7 Software Option Installation

See [Section 3.2.5, “License Update from Remote Data Center” on page 25](#) for example MML that installs software options onto the Signaling Gateway from an RDC.

Chapter 10: Signaling Server SNMP

10.1 Overview

The Signaling Server supports two distinct SNMP offerings:

- A basic offering supporting a simple SNMP MIB: DK4032 SNMP. (See [Section 10.1.2](#))
- An extended SNMP offering comprehensive support for status and traps, Distributed Structure Management Information (DSMI) SNMP. On SS7G21 and SS7G22 systems DSMI SNMP requires the purchase of the SS7SBG20SNMP software license. On the SS7G31 and SS7G32 systems the DSMI SNMP license is included with the purchased SGW license. (See [Section 10.1.1.](#))

SNMP operation is disabled by default.

Activating SNMP

SNMP support can be activated for:

- Basic SNMP, by setting the [CNSNS](#) MMI command's SNMP parameter to **DK4032**.
- Extended SNMP operation (if licensed) by setting the [CNSNS](#) MMI command's SNMP parameter to **DSMI**.

The server should be restarted using the [MNRSI](#) command to activate the SNMP agent.

10.1.1 DSMI SNMP

DSMI SNMP functionality allows the configuration of V1 (RFC 1157), V2c (RFC 1901) or V3 (RFC 2571) SNMP traps notifying external SNMP managers of alarm conditions and configuration state changes for the objects supported on the MIB.

For all objects represented within the DSMI MIB — and these include platform hardware components as well as configuration aspects — the MIB will maintain current object state and alarm conditions affecting the object.

SNMP traps can be configured on a per-object basis such that the remote SNMP manager is notified whenever the object is created, destroyed or the object state changed. Traps can also be configured to notify the manager of all events affecting the object. SNMP traps identify the event affecting the object — be it an alarm indication or configuration state change — and an event severity level.

For details of the DSMI SNMP MIB, supported alarms, SNMP traps and configuration refer to the *Dialogic® DSI Signaling Servers SNMP User Manual. (U05EPP01)*.

10.1.2 DK4032 SNMP

DK4032 SNMP supports an SNMP version 1 managed agent to allow a remote management platform to interrogate the current alarm status of the Signaling Server. Variables are supported from the MIB II system branch and from an enterprise MIB. The MIB provides read-only access to all variables.

The MIB II system branch provides basic information about managed node, that is, the Signaling Server. The Enterprise-specific branch of the MIB provides information as to the number of outstanding alarms, grouped by Category and Class (see [Chapter 8, "Alarm Fault Code Listing"](#)).

You should then use your SNMP manager to communicate with Signaling Server, using the SNMP UDP port 161.

The MIB is shown in full below:

```

-----
--
--                               The DataKinetics 4032 MIB
--
-----
--
-- Management Information Base for SNMP Network Management on DataKinetics
-- products.
--
-- Copyright 1999-2008, Dialogic Corporation. All Rights Reserved.
--
-- The information in this document is subject to change without notice.
--
-- Enterprise number is 4032.
--
-----
-- Issue      Date      By      Changes
-- -----
-- 2           08-Jul-02 GNK - First published release
-- 3           26-Mar-08 EWT - Alarm classes change to ITU values
-----

DK-GLOBAL-REG DEFINITIONS ::= BEGIN

    IMPORTS
        enterprises          FROM RFC1155-SMI
        OBJECT-TYPE          FROM RFC1155-SMI;
--
-- The DataKinetics enterprise node
--
    datakinetics             OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { enterprises 4032 }

--
-----
-- The MIB version stands alone at the top level
--
    dkMibVer OBJECT-TYPE
        SYNTAX  INTEGER
        ACCESS  read-only
        STATUS  mandatory
        DESCRIPTION
            "The current version of the MIB running on the agent. Currently
            the following values are recognised

            0 - Pre-release
            1 - Pre-release
            2 - First published release"

        ::= { datakinetics 1 }

--
-----
-- Top level nodes within DK4032 MIB.
--
    dkSysInfo                OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { datakinetics 2 }

--
-----
-- The system information branch
--
    dkSysAlarms              OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { dkSysInfo 4 }

--
-----
-- The Alarms branch
--
    dkAlrmCategory           OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { dkSysAlarms 1 }

    dkAlrmPcm OBJECT-TYPE
        SYNTAX  INTEGER
        ACCESS  read-only
        STATUS  mandatory
        DESCRIPTION
            "The number of active PCM alarms"

```

```
 ::= { dkAlrmCategory 1 }

dkAlrmSig OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX  INTEGER
    ACCESS  read-only
    STATUS  mandatory
    DESCRIPTION
        "The number of active signalling alarms"
    ::= { dkAlrmCategory 2 }

dkAlrmSys OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX  INTEGER
    ACCESS  read-only
    STATUS  mandatory
    DESCRIPTION
        "The number of active system alarms"
    ::= { dkAlrmCategory 3 }

dkAlrmClass          OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { dkSysAlarms 2 }

dkClass1 OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX  INTEGER
    ACCESS  read-only
    STATUS  mandatory
    DESCRIPTION
        "The number of active Class 5 alarms"
    ::= { dkAlrmClass 1 }

dkClass2 OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX  INTEGER
    ACCESS  read-only
    STATUS  mandatory
    DESCRIPTION
        "The number of active Class 4 alarms"
    ::= { dkAlrmClass 2 }

dkClass3 OBJECT-TYPE
    SYNTAX  INTEGER
    ACCESS  read-only
    STATUS  mandatory
    DESCRIPTION
        "The number of active Class 3 alarms"
    ::= { dkAlrmClass 3 }

END

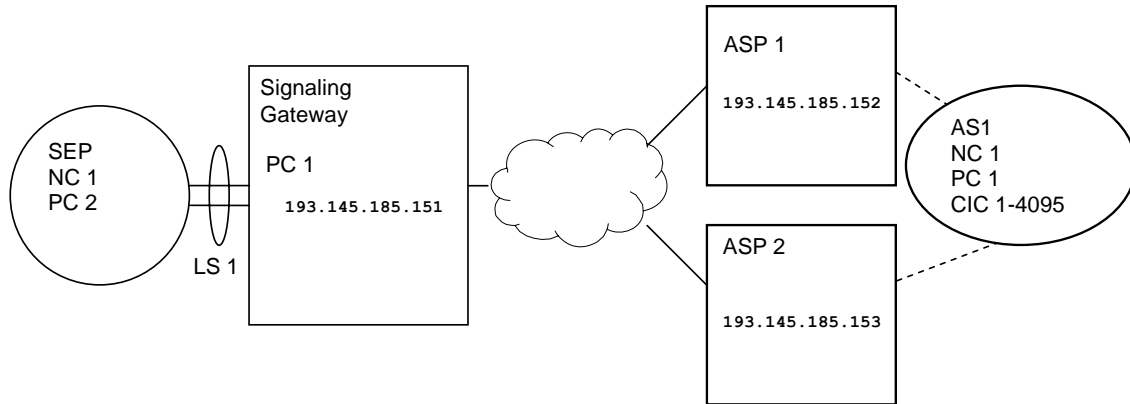
-- -----
-- -----
```


Chapter 11: Worked Configuration Examples

11.1 Backhaul Configuration

The following is an example of a Signaling Gateway working in a “backhaul” configuration. The Signaling Gateway is connected to a single Signaling End Point (SEP) on the TDM side. On the IP side there is a single Remote Application Server (RAS) that processes circuit-related messages. The RAS exists on two ASPs for resilience. On the SS7 side, boards 2 and 3 are used to terminate two SS7 E1 PCMs. Each PCM carries 1 timeslot with SS7 signaling. The Point Code of the gateway equipment is 1, which is the same as that of the application server.

Figure 12. Example Back-Haul Configuration



The set of commands required to configure the system is as follows:

```

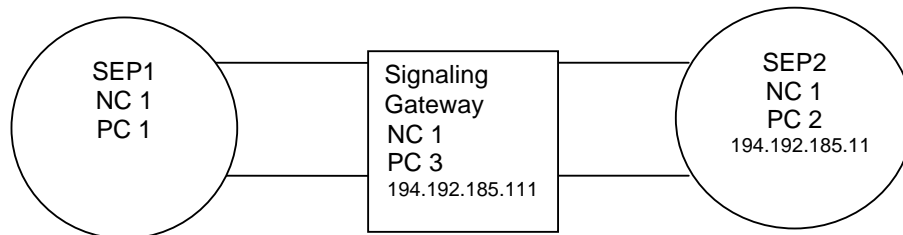
CNSYS:SYSID=THISSITE,IPADDR=193.145.185.151;
MNRSI;
CNBOI:BPOS=2,BRDTYPE=SPCI2S-4-2,SIGTYPE=SS7;
CNBOI:BPOS=3,BRDTYPE=SPCI2S-4-2,SIGTYPE=SS7;
CNPCI:PCM=2-3,PCMTYPE=E1,SYNCPRI=1;
CNPCI:PCM=3-3,PCMTYPE=E1,SYNCPRI=1;
C7LSI:LS=1,OPC=1,DPC=2,LSSIZE=2,SS7MD=ITU14,NC=1,NI=2;
C7SLI:C7LINK=1,EQU=2-1,TS=2-3-16,LS=1,SLC=0;
C7SLI:C7LINK=2,EQU=3-1,TS=3-3-16,LS=1,SLC=1;
C7RTI:C7RT=1,NC=1,DPC=2,LS1=1;
SNSLI:SNLINK=1,SNTP=SGM3UA,END=S,SS7MD=ITU14,NC=1,
      IPADDR=193.145.185.152,LABEL=ASP1;
SNSLI:SNLINK=2,SNTP=SGM3UA,END=S,SS7MD=ITU14,NC=1,
      IPADDR=193.145.185.153,LABEL=ASP2;
SNRAI:RAS=1,NC=1,DPC=1,RC=1,LABEL=AS1;
SNALI:RAS=1,SEQ=1,SNLINK=1;
SNALI:RAS=1,SEQ=2,SNLINK=2;
SGDPI:DEST=1,RAS=1,RTPRI=NONE,LABEL=AS1;
SGDPI:DEST=2,RTPRI=MTP,LABEL=TDM_SEP;
SGRKI:RKI=1,RKTAB=1,NC=1,DPC=1,BCIC=1,RANGE=4095,DEST=1;
SGRKI:RKI=2,RKTAB=1,NC=1,DPC=2,DEST=2;
SGIRI:IR=1,RKTAB=1,NC=1,DOMAIN=MTP;
SGIRI:IR=2,RKTAB=1,NC=1,DOMAIN=IP;
MNBLE:BPOS=2&&3;
MNBLE:SNLINK=1&&2;
MNBLE:C7LINK=1&&2;
MNBLE:RAS=1;
  
```

11.2 M2PA Longhaul Configuration

The following is an example of a Signaling Gateway offering the longhaul of SS7 signaling over M2PA. The Signaling Gateway is connected to a Signaling End Point (SEP) on the TDM side and an SEP on the IP side. Each SEP treats the Signaling Gateway as an STP to reach its destination SEP. On the TDM side, board 1 is used to terminate two SS7 E1 PCMs with clock being taken from SEP 1. Each PCM carries 1 timeslot with SS7 signaling to SEP 1. On the SIGTRAN IP side, two M2PA associations are used to convey two SS7 signaling links to SEP 2. The Point Code of the gateway equipment is 3; the SEPs are Point Codes 1 and 2 respectively.

Note: Potentially, routing keys are not required in this scenario, in that you could simply configure a the incoming route to go directly to the TDM destination. Routing keys are present since they allow the Signaling Gateway to validate the DPC in the received data message.

Figure 13. M2PA Longhaul Configuration



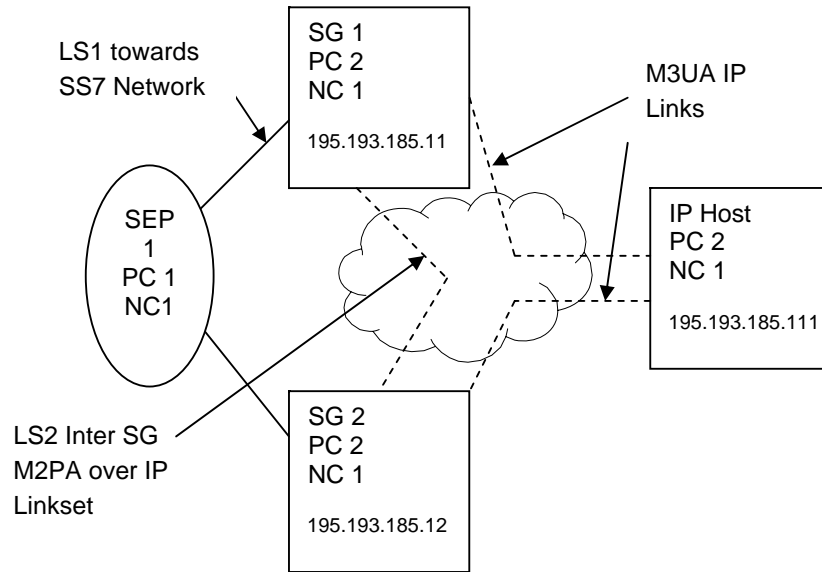
The set of commands required to configure the system is as follows:

```

CNSYS:SYSID=SGW1,IPADDR=194.192.185.111;
MNRSI;
CNBOI:BPOS=1,BRDTYPE=SPCI2S-4-2,SIGTYPE=SS7;
CNBOI:BPOS=2,BRDTYPE=SPCI2S-4-2,SIGTYPE=SS7;
CNPCI:PCM=1-3,PCMTYPE=E1,SYNCPRI=1;
CNPCI:PCM=2-3,PCMTYPE=E1,SYNCPRI=1;
SNSLI:SNLINK=1,SNTYPE=M2PA,END=C,IPADDR=194.192.185.11,HPORT=3565,PPORT=3565,LABEL=SEP2-1;
SNSLI:SNLINK=2,SNTYPE=M2PA,END=C,IPADDR=194.192.185.11,HPORT=3566,PPORT=3566,LABEL=SEP2-2;
C7LSI:LS=1,OPC=3,DPC=1,LSSIZE=2,SS7MD=ITU14,NC=1,NI=2;
C7LSI:LS=2,OPC=3,DPC=2,LSSIZE=2,SS7MD=ITU14,NC=1,NI=2;
C7SLI:C7LINK=1,EQU=1-1,TS=1-3-16,LS=1,SLC=0;
C7SLI:C7LINK=2,EQU=2-1,TS=2-3-16,LS=1,SLC=1;
C7SLI:C7LINK=3,SNLINK=1,LS=2,SLC=0;
C7SLI:C7LINK=4,SNLINK=2,LS=2,SLC=1;
C7RTI:C7RT=1,NC=1,DPC=1,LS1=1;
C7RTI:C7RT=2,NC=1,DPC=2,LS1=2;
SGDPI:DEST=1,RTPRI=MTP,LABEL=SEP1-2;
SGRKI:RKI=1,RKTAB=1,NC=1,DPC=1,DEST=1;
SGRKI:RKI=2,RKTAB=1,NC=1,DPC=2,DEST=1;
SGIRI:IR=1,NC=1,RKTAB=1;
MNBLE:BPOS=1&2;
MNBLE:SNLINK=1&2;
MNBLE:C7LINK=1&&4;
  
```

11.3 Dual Resilient Configuration

Figure 14. Example Dual Resilient Configuration



The following configuration commands are for SG1 and SG2, where SG1 and SG2 are in DUAL operation and SG1, SG2 and the IP host are acting as a single Point Code. Note the configuration of LS2 between the two SGs and the use of this link set for routes to the SS7 network.

Note: While this example shows a linkset with M2PA SS7 links over IP between the two Signaling Gateways, the linkset could equally contain SS7 links utilizing timeslots on a PCM between the two Signaling Gateways.

11.3.1 SG 1 Configuration

```
CNSYS:SYSID=SS7G2x 1,IPADDR=194.192.185.11;
CNBOI:BPOS=1,BRDTYPE=SPCI2S-4-2,SIGTYPE=SS7;
CNPCI:PCM=1-3,PCMTYPE=E1,SYNCPRI=1;
C7LSI:LS=1,OPC=2,DPC=1,LSSIZE=2,SS7MD=ITU14,NC=1,NI=2;
C7LSI:LS=2,OPC=2,DPC=2,LSSIZE=2,SS7MD=ITU14,NC=1,NI=2;
C7RTI:C7RT=1,DPC=1,LS1=1,LS2=2;
C7RTI:C7RT=2,DPC=2,LS1=2;
SNSLI:SNLINK=1,SNLTYPE=M2PA,END=C,IPADDR=194.192.185.12,
LABEL=INTER-SG;
C7SLI:C7LINK=1,EQU=1-1,TS=1-3-16,LS=1,SLC=0;
C7SLI:C7LINK=2,SNLINK=1,LS=2,SLC=0;

SNSLI:SNLINK=2,SNLTYPE=SGM3UA,END=S,SS7MD=ITU14,NC=1,
IPADDR=194.192.185.111,LABEL=IP Host;
SNRAI:RAS=1,NC=1,DPC=2,RC=1,LABEL=IP Host;
SNALI:RAS=1,SEQ=1,SNLINK=2;
SGDPI:DEST=1,AS=1,LABEL=IP Host;
SGDPI:DEST=2,RTPRI=MTP,LABEL=SS7 Net;
SGRKI:RKI=1,RKTAB=1,NC=1,DPC=2,DEST=1;
SGRKI:RKI=2,RKTAB=1,NC=1,DPC=1,DEST=2;
SGIRI:IR=1,RKTAB=1,NC=1;
MNBLE:BPOS=1;
MNBLE:SNLINK=1&2;
MNBLE:C7LINK=1&&2;
MNBLE:RAS=1;
```

11.3.2 SG 2 Configuration

```
CNSYS:SYSID=SS7G2x 2,IPADDR=194.192.185.12;
CNBOI:BPOS=1,BRDTYPE=SPCI2S-4-2,SIGTYPE=SS7;
CNPCI:PCM=1-3,PCMTYPE=E1,SYNCPRI=1;
C7LSI:LS=1,OPC=2,DPC=1,LSSIZE=2,SS7MD=ITU14,NC=1,NI=2;
C7LSI:LS=2,OPC=2,DPC=2,LSSIZE=2,SS7MD=ITU14,NC=1,NI=2;
C7RTI:C7RT=1,DPC=1,LS1=1,LS2=2;
C7RTI:C7RT=2,DPC=2,LS1=2;
SNSLI:SNLINK=1,SNTYPE=M2PA,END=C,IPADDR=194.192.185.11,
LABEL=INTER-SG;
C7SLI:C7LINK=1,EQU=1-1,TS=1-3-16,LS=1,SLC=0;
C7SLI:C7LINK=2,SNLINK=1,LS=2,SLC=0;
SNSLI:SNLINK=2,SNTYPE=SGM3UA,END=S,SS7MD=ITU14,NC=1,
IPADDR=194.192.185.111,LABEL=IP Host;
SNRAI:RAS=1,NC=1,DPC=2,RC=1,LABEL=IP Host;
SNALI:RAS=1,SEQ=1,SNLINK=2;
SGDPI:DEST=1,RAS=1,LABEL=IP Host;
SGDPI:DEST=2,RTPRI=MTP,LABEL=SS7 Net;
SGRKI:RKI=1,RKTAB=1,NC=1,DPC=2,DEST=1;
SGRKI:RKI=2,RKTAB=1,NC=1,DPC=1,DEST=2;
SGIRI:IR=1,RKTAB=1,NC=1;
MNBLE:BPOS=1;
MNBLE:SNLINK=1&2;
MNBLE:C7LINK=1&&2;
MNBLE:RAS=1;
```


Chapter 12: Network Time Protocol

The Network Time Protocol, NTP, allows synchronization of the internal system clock with an external time source thus providing greater accuracy for system alarm events and SNMP trap notifications.

NTP can be activated using the [CNTDS](#) (set time and date) command, while up to 16 remote NTP servers can be configured using the [CNTPI](#) command. The current status of the NTP servers can be identified using the [STTPP](#) command.

Chapter 13: Command Summary

Alarm Commands

- [ALCLS](#) - Alarm Class Set
- [ALCLP](#) - Alarm Class Print
- [ALFCP](#) - Alarm Fault Code Print
- [ALLIP](#) - Alarm List Print
- [ALLOP](#) - Alarm Log Print
- [ALREI](#) - Alarm Reset Initiate
- [ALTEI](#) - Alarm Test Initiate
- [ALTEE](#) - Alarm Test End

Configuration Commands

- [CNBOI](#) - Configuration Board Initiate
- [CNBOE](#) - Configuration Board End
- [CNBOP](#) - Configuration Board Print
- [CNBUI](#) - Configuration Back Up Initiate
- [CNMOI](#) - Configuration Monitor Initiate
- [CNMOE](#) - Configuration Monitor End
- [CNMOP](#) - Configuration Monitor Print
- [CNOBP](#) - Display TRAP Configuration
- [CNOBS](#) - Set TRAP Configuration
- [CNPCI](#) - Configuration PCM Initiate
- [CNPCC](#) - Configuration PCM Change
- [CNPCE](#) - Configuration PCM End
- [CNPCP](#) - Configuration PCM Print
- [CNRDI](#) - Configuration Remote Data Center Initiate
- [CNRDC](#) - Configuration Remote Data Center Change
- [CNRDE](#) - Configuration Remote Data Center End
- [CNRDP](#) - Configuration Remote Data Center Print
- [CNSMC](#) - Change SNMP Manager Configuration
- [CNSME](#) - End SNMP Manager Configuration
- [CNSMI](#) - Set SNMP Manager Configuration
- [CNSMP](#) - Display SNMP Manager Configuration
- [CNSNS](#) - Configuration SNMP Set
- [CNSNP](#) - Configuration SNMP Print
- [CNSWP](#) - Configuration Software Print
- [CNSYS](#) - Configuration System Set
- [CNSYP](#) - Configuration System Print
- [CNTDS](#) - Configuration Time and Date Set
- [CNTDP](#) - Configuration Time And Date Print
- [CNTOS](#) - Configuration Timeout Value Set
- [CNTOP](#) - Configuration Timeout Value Print
- [CNTPE](#) - Configuration Network Time Protocol Server End
- [CNTPI](#) - Configuration Network Time Protocol Server Initiate

- CNTPP - Configuration Network Time Protocol Print
- CNTSP - Configuration Timeslot Print
- CNUPI - Configuration Update Initiate
- CNUSC - Change SNMP v3 User Configuration
- CNUSE - End SNMP v3
- CNUSI - Set SNMP v3
- CNUSP - Display SNMP v3
- CNXCI - Configuration Cross Connect Initiate
- CNXCE - Configuration Cross Connect End
- CNXCP - Configuration Cross Connect Print

CCS SS7 Signaling Commands

- C7LSI - CCS SS7 Link Set Initiate
- C7LSC - CCS SS7 Link Set Change
- C7LSE - CCS SS7 Link Set End
- C7LSP - CCS SS7 Link Set Print
- C7RTI - CCS SS7 Route Initiate
- C7RTC - CCS SS7 Route Change
- C7RTE - CCS SS7 Route End
- C7RTP - CCS SS7 Route Print
- C7SLI - CCS SS7 Signaling Link Initiate
- C7SLC - CCS SS7 Signaling Link Change
- C7SLE - CCS SS7 Signaling Link End
- C7SLP - CCS SS7 Signaling Link Print

IP Commands

- IPEPS - Set Ethernet Port Configuration
- IPEPP - Display Ethernet Port Configuration
- IPGWI - Internet Protocol Gateway Initiate
- IPGWE - Internet Protocol Gateway End
- IPGWP - Internet Protocol Gateway Print

MML Commands

- MMLOI - MML Log Off Initiate
- MMLOP - MML Log Off Print
- MMLOS - MML Log Off Set
- MMPTC - MML Port Change
- MMPTP - MML Port Print

Maintenance Commands

- MNBLI - Maintenance Blocking Initiate
- MNBLE - Maintenance Blocking End
- MNINI - Maintenance Inhibit Initiate
- MNINE - Maintenance Inhibit End
- MNRSI - Maintenance Restart System Initiate

Measurement Commands

- [MSC7P](#) - Measurements SS7 Print
- [MSEPP](#) - Measurement Ethernet Port Print
- [MSLCP](#) - Measurement of License Capability Print
- [MSPCP](#) - Measurements PCM Print
- [MSSLP](#) - Measurements SIGTRAN Link Print
- [MSSYP](#) - Measurements System Print

Remote Data Center Commands

- [RDCRI](#) - Remote Data Center Continuous Record Initiate
- [RDCRC](#) - Remote Data Center Continuous Record Change
- [RDCRE](#) - Remote Data Center Continuous Record End
- [RDCRP](#) - Remote Data Center Continuous Record Print
- [RDPDI](#) - Remote Data Center Periodic Data Initiate
- [RDPDE](#) - Remote Data Center Periodic Data End
- [RDPDP](#) - Remote Data Center Periodic Data Print
- [RDPRI](#) - Remote Data Center Periodic Report Initiate
- [RDPRC](#) - Remote Data Center Periodic Report Change
- [RDPRE](#) - Remote Data Center Periodic Report End
- [RDPRP](#) - Remote Data Center Periodic Report Print

Signaling Gateway Commands

- [SGDPI](#) - Signaling Gateway Destination Point Initiate
- [SGDPC](#) - Signaling Gateway Destination Point Change
- [SGDPE](#) - Signaling Gateway Destination Point End
- [SGDPP](#) - Signaling Gateway Destination Point Print
- [SGIRI](#) - Signaling Gateway Incoming Route Initiate
- [SGIRC](#) - Signaling Gateway Incoming Route Change
- [SGIRE](#) - Signaling Gateway Incoming Route End
- [SGIRP](#) - Signaling Gateway Incoming Route Print
- [SGRKI](#) - Signaling Gateway Routing Key Initiate
- [SGRKE](#) - Signaling Gateway Routing Key End
- [SGRKP](#) - Signaling Gateway Routing Key Print

SIGTRAN Commands

- [SNALI](#) - SIGTRAN Application Server List Initiate
- [SNALE](#) - SIGTRAN Application Server List End
- [SNALP](#) - SIGTRAN Application Server List Print
- [SNRAI](#) - SIGTRAN Remote Application Server Initiate
- [SNRAE](#) - SIGTRAN Remote Application Server End
- [SNRAP](#) - SIGTRAN Remote Application Server Print
- [SNNAI](#) - SIGTRAN Network Appearance Initiate
- [SNNAE](#) - SIGTRAN Network Appearance End
- [SNNAP](#) - SIGTRAN Network Appearance Print
- [SNSLI](#) - SIGTRAN Signaling Link Initiate
- [SNSLC](#) - SIGTRAN Signaling Link Change

- [SNSLE](#) - SIGTRAN Signaling Link End
- [SNSLP](#) - SIGTRAN Signaling Link Print

Status Commands

- [STALP](#) - Status Alarm Print
- [STRAP](#) - Status Remote Application Server Print
- [STBOP](#) - Status Board Print
- [STCRP](#) - Status C7 Route Print
- [STC7P](#) - Status C7 Link Print
- [STDDP](#) - Status Disk Drive Print
- [STEPP](#) - Status Ethernet Port Print
- [STIPP](#) - Status IP Print
- [STLCP](#) - Status Licensing Print
- [STPCP](#) - Status PCM Print
- [STRDP](#) - Status Remote Data Center Print
- [STSLP](#) - Status SIGTRAN Link Print
- [STSYN](#) - Status System Print
- [STTPP](#) - Network Time Protocol Status Print

Glossary

| | |
|-------|---|
| ASP | Application Server Process. A process instance of an Remote Application Server (RAS). An ASP serves as an active or backup process of an Application Server (for example, part of a distributed virtual switch or database). Examples of ASPs are processes (or process instances) of MGCs, IP SCPs or IP HLRs. An ASP contains an SCTP endpoint and may be configured to process signaling traffic within more than one Application Server. |
| AIS | Alarm Indication Signal |
| ANSI | American National Standards Institute |
| BER | Bit Error Rate |
| CCITT | Consultative Committee on International Telegraphy and Telephony |
| CCS | Common Channel Signaling |
| CIC | Circuit Identification Code |
| CPU | Central Processing Unit |
| DC | Direct Current |
| DSC | Digital Signaling Converter |
| DSI | Distributed Signaling Interface |
| DSMI | Dialogic® / Distributed Structured Management Information |
| DSR | Data Set Ready |
| DTE | Data Terminal Equipment |
| DTR | Data Terminal Ready |
| FTP | File Transfer Protocol |
| IETF | Internet Engineering Task Force |
| IP | Internet Protocol |
| ITU | International Telecommunication Union |
| LIU | Line Interface Unit |
| M2PA | MTP 2 Peer to Peer Adaptation Layer |
| M3UA | MTP3 User Adaptation Layer |
| MML | Man-Machine Interface Language |
| MTP | Message Transfer Part (of SS7 signaling) |
| NTP | Network Time Protocol |
| PCM | Pulse Code Modulation |
| PSU | Power Supply Unit |
| RAS | Remote Application Server. A logical entity serving a specific Routing Key. An example of a RAS is a virtual switch element handling all call processing for a unique range of PSTN trunks, identified by an SS7 SIO/DPC/OPC/CIC_range. Another example is a virtual database element, handling all HLR transactions for a particular SS7 DPC/OPC/SCCP_SSN combination. The RAS contains a set of one or more unique Application Server Processes (ASPs), of which one or more is normally actively processing traffic. Note that there is a 1:1 relationship between an RAS and a Routing Key. |
| RDC | Remote Data Center |
| SCTP | Stream Control Transmission Protocol |
| SGW | Signaling Gateway |

| | |
|---------|------------------------------------|
| SIGTRAN | Signaling Transport |
| SIU | Signaling Interface Unit |
| SNMP | Simple Network Management Protocol |
| SS7 | Signaling System Number 7 |
| SSH | Secure Shell |
| STP | Signaling Transfer Point |
| SEP | Signaling End Point |
| SNM | Signaling Network Management |
| TDM | Time-Division Multiplexing |